

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

BULLETIN

OF THE

UNITED STATES

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

No. 158



WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1899

UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

CHARLES D. WALCOTT, DIRECTOR

THE
MORAINES OF SOUTHEASTERN SOUTH DAKOTA

AND

THEIR ATTENDANT DEPOSITS

BY

JAMES EDWARD TODD



WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1899

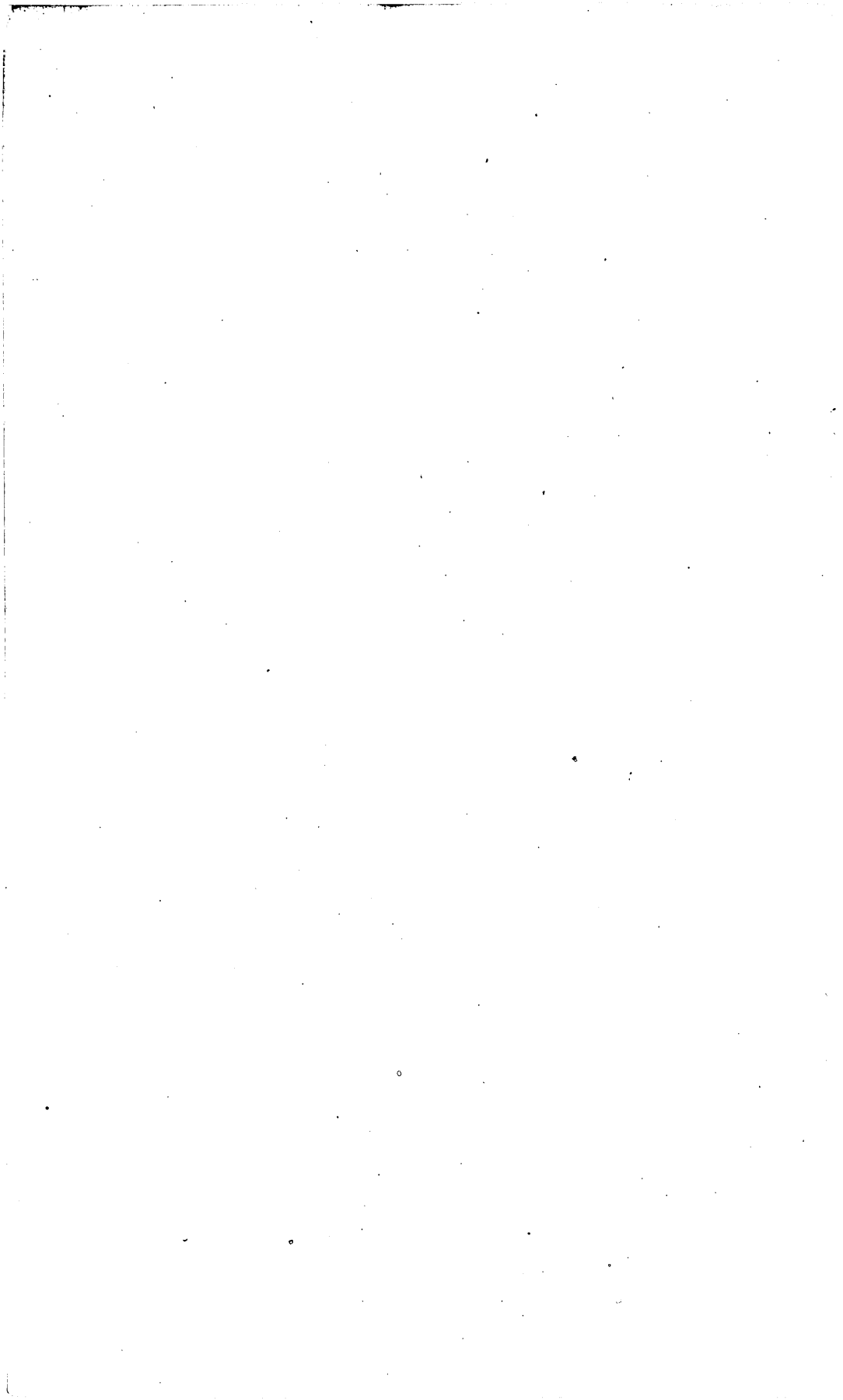


CONTENTS.

	Page.
CHAPTER I. INTRODUCTION	13
History of work.....	13
Limits of region	14
Sketch of older formations.....	14
Elevations	16
Acknowledgments	16
CHAPTER II. FIRST (OUTER) OR ALTAMONT MORAINÉ.....	18
Course of the moraine.....	18
From Turtle Point to Pratt Creek	19
From Pratt Creek to Running Water	25
Emanuel Creek Gap.....	28
From Bonhomme to Spirit Mound	29
Turkey Ridge.....	31
Vermilion Gap	32
From Brule Creek to Canton	32
Big Sioux Gap	34
From the Big Sioux to Vermilion Point.....	35
General characteristics of the moraine.....	36
Structure and position	37
Height	38
Stoniness and distribution of bowlders	39
CHAPTER III. THE DRIFT REGION OUTSIDE OF THE OUTER MORAINÉ.....	42
Red Lake region	42
Ancient channels	46
Bowlder ridges	47
Old water line	47
Elevations	48
Notes from wells and other exposures.....	49
Explanatory hypotheses	51
Ponca reach, or region from mouth of Pratt Creek to mouth of Niobrara..	53
Loess region	56
Boundaries and surface.....	56
Western boundary of glacial drift	56
Eastern boundary of glacial drift.....	58
Description of surface	58
Elevation.....	58
Basins and knolls.....	60
Elevated ridges	60
Ancient channels.....	60
Areas sloping away from principal streams	61
Principal streams.....	62
Terraces.....	63
Sand hills	64

	Page.
CHAPTER III. THE DRIFT REGION OUTSIDE OF THE OUTER MORaine—Cont.	
Loess region—Continued.	
Drift deposits of the loess region.....	64
Till, its color, structure, etc.....	65
Red clay.....	66
Gravel and sand deposits.....	66
Relation of the drift to the underlying formations.....	67
Striation of underlying rocks.....	68
Distribution of the drift.....	69
In Nebraska.....	69
Volcanic ash stratum.....	70
In South Dakota.....	81
In Iowa.....	85
Elevation of surface of drift of loess region.....	91
Relations of drift to loess.....	93
The "old soil" and the charcoal streak.....	93
Summary.....	94
Loess.....	95
Structure and composition.....	95
Extent.....	96
Fossils.....	98
Concretions.....	98
Origin.....	99
Thickness.....	99
Relation to the outer moraine.....	100
Coteau des Prairies region.....	103
Boundaries.....	103
Surface.....	103
Valleys.....	104
The Dells at Dell Rapids.....	107
Great Bend of the Big Sioux.....	108
Bowldery knolls.....	109
Hummocks.....	110
Striæ.....	110
CHAPTER IV. THE DRIFT REGION INSIDE OF THE OUTER MORaine.....	113
Second or Gary moraine.....	113
Region between the second and principal moraines.....	117
General characteristics.....	117
Western region.....	117
Ancient lakes.....	119
Ancient channels.....	119
Wells.....	120
An ancient tamarack swamp.....	121
Spotted surface of the country.....	121
James Valley.....	122
Exposures of older rocks.....	122
Vermilion Valley.....	123
Region inside the second moraine.....	124
Flowing wells.....	125
Cause of Lake Dakota.....	125
Buried wood.....	126
Striæ within the moraine.....	126

	Page.
CHAPTER V. TERRACES OF THE MISSOURI AND BIG SIOUX, AND HYDROLOGY	
OF THE REGION	128
Terraces of the Missouri and its tributaries	128
Silt terraces	128
Lower bowldery terraces	130
Composition	133
Higher bowldery terraces	135
Terraces along the Big Sioux	138
Silt and lower bowldery terraces	138
Higher bowldery terraces	139
Terraces along other streams	140
Present slopes of the Missouri and Big Sioux	140
Age of the terraces	140
Diagram of the trough of the Missouri	141
Westward elevation of the region	141
Northward elevation of the region	144
Age of the trough of the Missouri	146
Is the trough of pre-Glacial origin?	146
The trough still deepening	150
Was the trough excavated previous to the loess epoch?	153
Elevations	154
INDEX	169



ILLUSTRATIONS.

	Page.
PLATE I. Pleistocene deposits of southeastern South Dakota and adjacent regions	14
II. View of Turtle Ridge from the east.....	20
III. View of old overflow channel in Turtle Ridge	22
IV. Lake Andes Outlet, from the north	26
V. James Ridge, from the north	28
VI. The attenuated moraine and Spirit Mound.....	30
VII. Map of Turkey Ridge	32
VIII. Details of the moraine in Union County.....	34
IX. Channel, lake, and osar ridges northeast of Montrose.....	36
X. Continuation of osars east of Montrose.....	38
XI. Near view of volcanic ash stratum in bluff above West Point, Nebraska	70
XII. Bluff above Florence, Nebraska, showing ash stratum.....	72
XIII. Base of drift near Coleridge, Nebraska.....	74
XIV. Eastward view from north edge of the loess south of Herrick, Nebraska	102
XV. Ice sheet occupying the principal moraine.....	120
XVI. Ice sheet occupying the second moraine	122
XVII. Photograph of striæ on the quartzite near Bridgewater, South Dakota.....	126
XVIII. Great bend of the Missouri, from the east	128
XIX. Lower bowldery terrace opposite Fort Randall	132
XX. Lower bowldery terrace, from the old bank north of Greenwood, South Dakota.....	134
XXI. Upper bowldery terrace southwest of Santee Agency, Nebraska	136
XXII. Big Sioux River near Fairview, South Dakota	138
XXIII. Diagram of main features of the trough of the Missouri.....	140
XXIV. Sections across the glaciated region east and west	144
XXV. Sections radiating across the moraines.....	146
XXVI. Sections across the Missouri at Chamberlain, Sioux City, and Blair..	148
XXVII. Sections across the Missouri at Omaha, Plattsmouth, and Nebraska City.....	150
FIG. 1. Turtle Point, from the northwest	19
2. Map of Turtle Ridge and southwest Wessingtons.....	20
3. Transverse section of Turtle Ridge.....	21
4. Map of osar-like ridges near Crow Lake.....	23
5. Portion of the moraine near Bijou Hills.....	24
6. Cedar Creek Hills, from the north	25
7. The moraine half eroded by the Missouri.....	26
8. General view of the moraine from 2 miles south of Grandview.....	27
9. James Ridge, from the west.....	30
10. Inner slope of the moraine south of Wall Lake.....	35
11. Section of southwest Wessingtons	37

	Page.
FIG. 12. Bijou Hills, from the north.....	43
13. Buttes south of White River, from the north.....	43
14. Exposure showing base of the till north of Pacific Junction, Iowa...	68
15. Exposure showing base of the till near Berks, Nebraska.....	68
16. Section of south bluff of Missouri River near Herrick, Nebraska....	72
17. First railroad cut east of Osmond, Nebraska.....	75
18. Cuts east of Osmond, Nebraska.....	76
19. Sandpit section east of McCook, South Dakota.....	86
20. Summit cut between Silver and Keg creeks.....	94
21. Cut on Omaha and St. Louis Railroad west of Walnut Creek, Mills County, Iowa.....	94
22. Section from Boonsboro, Iowa, to the Missouri.....	101
23. Section near south line of Carroll County, Iowa.....	101
24. Section near junction of Middle Raccoon River and Willow Creek, Iowa.....	102
25. Sections at Sioux Falls, South Dakota.....	102
26. Sections at Sioux Falls, South Dakota.....	103
27. Various markings on Sioux quartzite.....	111
28. Pony Hills near Woonsocket, South Dakota.....	114
29. Enemy Creek Hills, from the northeast.....	115
30. A "gouge" from quartzite exposure near Bridgewater, South Dakota..	126
31. Record of soundings at Blair bridge, 1883.....	151

LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

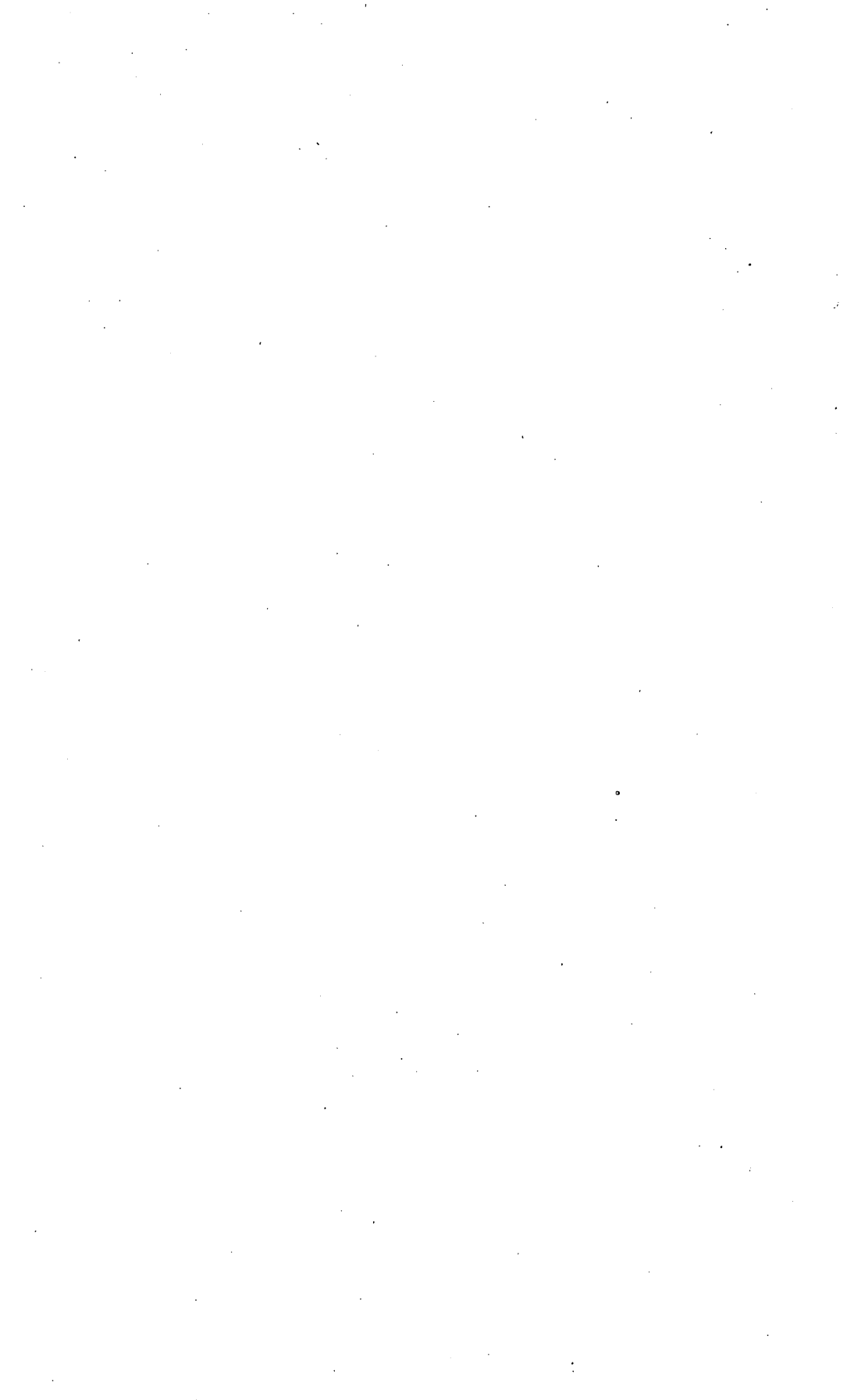
DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY,
Chicago, Ill., August 22, 1898.

SIR: I have the honor to submit herewith a report by Prof. James E. Todd on The Moraines of Southeastern South Dakota and their Attendant Deposits, which will be found to contain a large amount of valuable data relating to the later formations of that State.

Very respectfully, yours,

T. C. CHAMBERLIN,
Geologist.

HON. CHARLES D. WALCOTT,
Director of the United States Geological Survey.



THE MORAINES OF SOUTHEASTERN SOUTH DAKOTA AND THEIR ATTENDANT DEPOSITS.

By J. E. TODD

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.

HISTORY OF WORK.

At the reorganization of the United States Geological Survey in 1881, the author, under the direction of Prof. T. C. Chamberlin, geologist in charge of the glacial division, was instructed to explore the Dakota loop of the great moraine. At that time very little was known of the distribution of drift in Dakota. Aside from certain theoretical considerations which had been expressed by Professor Chamberlin and Mr. Warren Upham, little had been presented upon the subject. A few topographical notes by Nicollet in 1842, and a more direct treatment of the subject from wide but incomplete observation, presented by Gen. G. K. Warren in 1868 before the Chicago meeting of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, were the more important statements of observation. The latter distinctly makes the limit of glacial action to coincide with the Missouri River from the forty-eighth to the forty-third parallel. Dr. F. V. Hayden also, in the *American Journal of Science* for January, 1867, published a very interesting account of a trip taken by him to Rockport, Dakota, and Pipestone, Minnesota, in the previous October. His notes refer mainly to the older formations, but incidentally he records features of the drift.

After an examination of the field during the summers of 1881, 1882, and 1883 it was considered better to delay a report upon the whole region, and to present a preliminary report in the form of a bulletin upon a limited portion. The portion chosen, and to which this bulletin relates, was thought to bear most directly upon certain important questions and to be likely to furnish the most important results; moreover, it was the most accessible portion, because more generally occupied by settlers.

LIMITS OF REGION.

The limits chosen in the regular course of the moraine—the axial limits—are Turtle Point in Jerauld County, and a corresponding point in the northwestern part of Lake County. For convenience in reference we will name the latter Vermilion Point. Turtle Point is a conspicuous landmark, which forms a natural point of division on the west side of the loop, while Vermilion Point is on the east side of the loop in about the same latitude, and, although it is not so prominent a point of division, it is the most marked point near the northern limit of the writer's acquaintance with the moraine upon the east side. Turtle Point is upon the eastern edge of what is commonly known as the Coteau du Missouri, a region between the James and Missouri rivers spoken of by the early French explorers as the Plateau du Coteau du Missouri. The term "plateau," however, is a misnomer, for instead of a continuous plateau, it is merely the skeleton of one. The peripheral limits are, briefly, as follows: On the north, the parallel of Turtle Point, which is arbitrarily taken. On the other sides the limit theoretically coincides with that of the extreme dispersion of erratics from the portion of the moraine under consideration. On the west this boundary is most definite and is near; on the east it is confused with that of the Iowa lobe; on the south the theoretical limit is so remote that we shall need to fix an arbitrary limit, which we will take as not more than 100 miles from the moraine. A map of the region under consideration is shown on Pl. I.

Some of the advantages which may be derived from a careful presentation of this portion of the moraine are the following:

First. It gives opportunity to present in a natural and consecutive manner several typical features of drift deposits, moraines, berg drift, drainage outlets, gravel terraces, osars, etc.

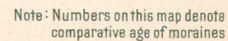
Second. It furnishes important data upon several of the open questions connected with certain Pleistocene problems, viz: The origin of loess, the distribution of glacial and glacio-natant deposits, oscillations of the earth's crust in the post-Pliocene, besides several minor questions connected with the physics and history of the glaciers.

Third. It forms a convenient introduction to the larger subject which it was first proposed to present.

SKETCH OF OLDER FORMATIONS.

Though our work pertains especially to the recent deposits formed during the Pleistocene period, a brief consideration of older deposits seems important, for the underlying rocks have influenced in several ways the distribution of the drift.

The older formations belong to widely separated epochs. So far as is yet known, the region under consideration exhibits only strata belonging to the Algonkian and the Cretaceous, with scattered fragments of



 STRIAE.
 MORAINES.
 TERRACES AND OLD CHANNELS.
 OSAR RIDGES.
 LIMIT OF NORTHERN OR GLACIAL DRIFT.

Tertiary deposits. The Algonkian—or, as it has been considered by Prof. N. H. Winchell, the lower Cambrian—is represented only by the red quartzite, which is conspicuously exposed along the Big Sioux, and was named several years since by Dr. C. A. White the Sioux quartzite. The exposures in this region appear to be portions of an irregular syncline, extending from southwestern Minnesota to the James River. An enumeration of localities will be found on another page (p. 122). The strata have usually but slight dip, rarely more than 6° . Ripple marks are frequent, but no fossils, except a few of doubtful character, have yet been found.¹ The rock bears evidence of ebb-and-flow structure. Oblique stratification, inclining in different directions, abounds in some strata. Thin seams of metamorphosed clay occur occasionally, the more notable being the “pipestone,” at Pipestone, Minnesota. The lower stratum exposed on Wolf Creek is a bed of unconsolidated sand, evidently once consolidated but now decomposed.

The Cretaceous rocks all belong to the Dakota group and to the three members separated by Hayden, but combined by King into the Colorado group.

The first, the Dakota sandstone, is exposed along the James River and its tributaries in Hutchinson, Hanson, and Davison counties and along the Missouri below Ponca, Nebraska.

The Benton group, comprising dark pyritiferous clays, is certainly found exposed only along the bluffs of the Missouri, from near the mouth of the James River to the vicinity of the Big Sioux.² Slight exposures near Milford, Nebraska, and Rockport, Dakota, also possibly belong to this group.

The Niobrara of Hayden, the chalkstone, forms a more conspicuous and important deposit, which extends very widely under the drift. It is exposed along the Missouri from Chamberlain to St. Helena; along the James and its tributaries in Hanson and Davison counties; at several localities along Clay and Turkey creeks; upon Beaver Creek, near Canton; on the Split Rock, north of Brandon; along the Big Sioux, at Akron and below, comprising the Inoceramus beds of White, and along Brule Creek, in Union County.

The Pierre group, consisting of clays of different colors and qualities, probably occupies four-fifths of the surface underneath the drift. It is exposed along the Missouri from near the mouth of the Niobrara to the northern limits of the region. It is this formation which is struck in wells which pass through the drift in all localities in the Dakotas east of the Missouri, except those that have been already indicated.

The Tertiary rocks are represented by the greenish quartzite—well shown at the Bijou Hills—and various beds of sand, gravel, and clay that are associated with it. These are ascribed to the Loup River group by Dr. Hayden, and no reason for questioning the determination

¹ Prof. N. H. Winchell, Thirteenth Ann. Rept. Geol. Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 1884.

² Cf. Hayden, 1870, p. 87.

has come to the writer's knowledge.¹ Distinct fossils were not noticed by him in it, though pieces of petrified wood and of mammalian bones have been noticed upon it, which may have been derived from it. It contains greenish pebbles of pitchstone at many points. In northeastern Nebraska the Loup River Tertiary is represented by over 80 feet of sands, marls, and clays containing petrified shells and bones of animals. From similarly situated beds north of Sioux City teeth of *Equus major* have been reported by Mr. Bain, who referred the beds to the Pleistocene.²

The Cretaceous clays have contributed largely to the mass of the till. The Tertiary rocks have been influential in the formation of buttes which have had an important limiting and directing influence upon the ice sheet. The Archean rocks have been less influential, not having been prominent enough to limit or deflect the ice, nor sufficiently yielding to contribute material of much volume. In a few cases, as at Rockport and near Alexandria, they seem to have exercised considerable directing power upon the lower portion of the ice.

ELEVATIONS.

The elevations which form an important portion of this paper were mostly taken with an aneroid barometer. A few are derived directly from railroad profiles. The more important elevations have been taken either several times or on days when the barometer showed little fluctuation. In general their accuracy corresponds to their distance from important streams or from railroads. A few are taken from the topographic surveys of the United States Geological Survey. At the beginning of our work the number of railroad elevations in the region under consideration was quite small, on account of its recent settlement. But the rapid railroad building of the last few years has been favorable to the work, both by furnishing exposures and in affording fresh and accurate information concerning elevations. The accuracy of the survey has been materially aided through the generous response on the part of railroad engineers to requests for profiles. In the appendix several of these are published for the first time.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS.

I would hereby gratefully acknowledge my indebtedness to Mr. D. J. Whittemore, chief engineer of the Chicago, Milwaukee, and St. Paul Railway Company, for a carefully prepared list of elevations of all stations and bridges over important streams along its lines in the States of North and South Dakota; to Mr. E. Gerber, assistant engineer of the Fremont, Elkhorn and Missouri Valley Railroad Company, for elevations upon all its lines in Nebraska, a section of the Missouri River at Blair, and other favors; to Mr. C. W. Johnson, chief engineer

¹ Gen. G. K. Warren's preliminary report on Nebraska and Dakota, p. 78.

² Iowa Geol. Survey, Vol. V, p. 277.

of the Chicago, St. Paul, Minneapolis and Omaha Railway Company, for elevations of all stations on its lines in Nebraska, and a section of the Missouri at Sioux City; to Mr. B. B. Colborne for a profile of a preliminary survey from Chamberlain, Dakota, to Lemars, Iowa; to Mr. George A. Lederle for a section of the Missouri at Omaha; and to Mr. J. H. Charles, of Sioux City, for obtaining elevations on the Sioux City and Northern Railway and the Pacific Short Line. I would also express gratitude to Hon. Alexander Mitchell, of the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway Company, and to Hon. Marvin Hūghitt, general manager of the Chicago and Northwestern Railway Company, for favors shown in transportation.

Bull. 158—2

CHAPTER II.

FIRST (OUTER) OR ALTAMONT MORAINÉ.

This is first presented because it furnishes a convenient line of reference in the further treatment of the area under consideration. It is also the best defined and most constant feature.

COURSE OF THE MORAINÉ.

The accompanying map, Pl. I, with a brief explanation, will give a comprehensive view of the direction and divisions of the moraine.

Beginning at Turtle Point, in Jerauld County, the head of a prominent interlobular portion, the moraine extends in a south and southwest direction past the Bijou Hills, nearly to the junction of Pratt Creek with the Missouri, where there is a gap a few miles in breadth. The more notable variation from a direct course is a small loop pushed westward toward Red Lake.

East of Pratt Creek the moraine appears again in the Cedar Creek Hills, which, lying on both sides of Cedar Creek, form a high V-shaped reentrant angle, pointing northeast. From the eastern end of the V the moraine extends in a general southeasterly direction, nearly to the junction of Wet Choteau and Dry Choteau creeks, where it crosses the former, turns sharply northward, and forms a long interlobular portion around the latter stream, being known as the Choteau Creek Hills. Below the junction of the Choteaus the moraine lies along the west bank of the stream nearly to its mouth, where it crosses and continues close along the bluffs of the Missouri to a point opposite the mouth of the Niobrara, where it develops a slight reentrant angle.

From this point no trace of it is found on either side of the Missouri until we pass below Bonhomme. A little east of that place, on the north side of the Missouri, it appears again, and, after forming a long and much-eroded loop to the east, reaches Lesterville, where, after forming a much smaller similar loop, it takes a southeasterly direction. About 6 miles east of Yankton it swings more to the east, crosses the James River, and continues to a broad gap through which Clay Creek passes. East of the Clay Creek Gap it reappears along the east bank of that stream and runs north and northwest to the vicinity of Childstown, where it again doubles upon itself and takes a quite direct course southeast to Spirit Mound, 6 miles north of Vermilion, forming Turkey Ridge.

East of Spirit Mound no trace of it is found until Brule Creek is reached, 10 miles east. There it reappears, running northward to Beres-

ford, and thence north-northeast to the vicinity of Canton. From that place to the vicinity of Sioux Falls it seems not to have been formed, except at three or four isolated points. About 5 miles east-southeast of Sioux Falls it reappears on the west bank of the Big Sioux, and curves around the bend of the Big Sioux at Sioux Falls, and thence west and northwest to the vicinity of Montrose. From there it lies along the east side of the East Vermilion River to Vermilion Point, about 12 miles northwest of Madison. There it forms a reentrant angle by turning sharply to the east.

The map represents also the course of the moraine for some distance outside the limits chosen.

FROM TURTLE POINT TO PRATT CREEK.

We have found it convenient to begin at the prominent headland in Jerauld County known as Turtle Point. A view of this from the

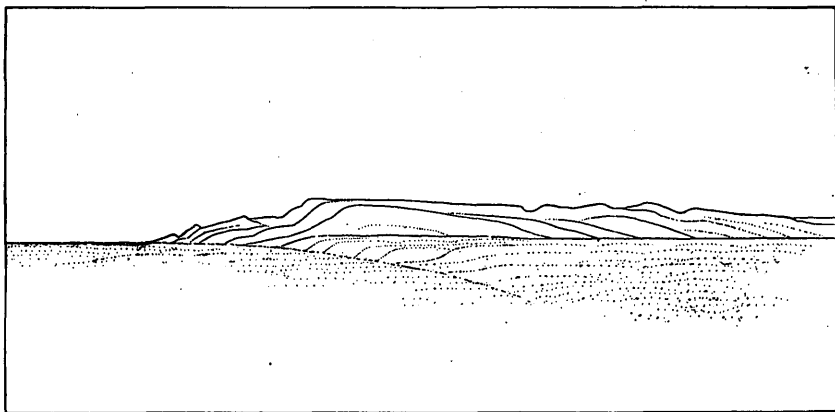


FIG. 1.—Turtle Point, from the northwest.

northwest is given in fig. 1. This forms the northern end of a high, even-topped ridge which extends from sec. 35, T. 108, R. 65, to the southern portion of T. 106, R. 65, a distance of 12 miles.

The point derives its name from the unique figure of a turtle, 1 rod in length, formed upon a mound capping the summit of the point. This figure is formed of small bowlders placed at short intervals so as to describe the outline of a turtle. The range extending south we shall call Turtle Ridge (Pl. II). Its height above the plain to the east is nearly 500 feet. Its eastern face is quite abrupt, and along its northern portion is much marked by gulches, which arise from springs issuing from beneath the drift. One of them is known as Wessington Spring, which pours forth a copious supply of slightly sulphurous water.

These gulches seem very subject to landslides, which have repeatedly changed the location of the springs. This tendency to slide is probably the effect of water softening the clays below. Some of

these springs are connected with long, trough-like ridges. One, in particular, running east from an old exit of the Wessington Spring, is extraordinarily large. It extends eastward from the face of the ridge, $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 miles, with a height midway of from 50 to 75 feet above the adjacent slope.

The western side of the Turtle Ridge subsides with a gentle slope to a broad, undulating plain, around the heads of Smith and Crow creeks.

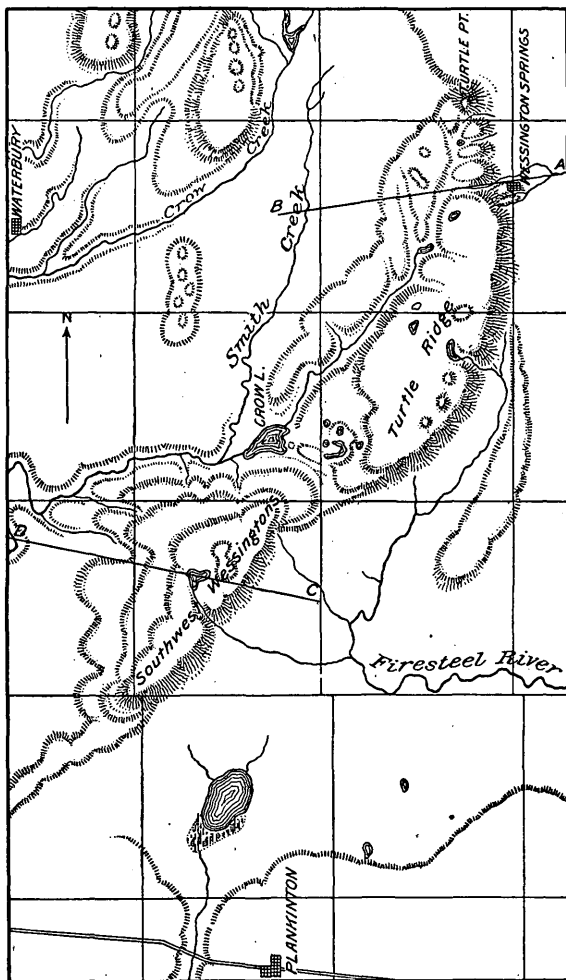
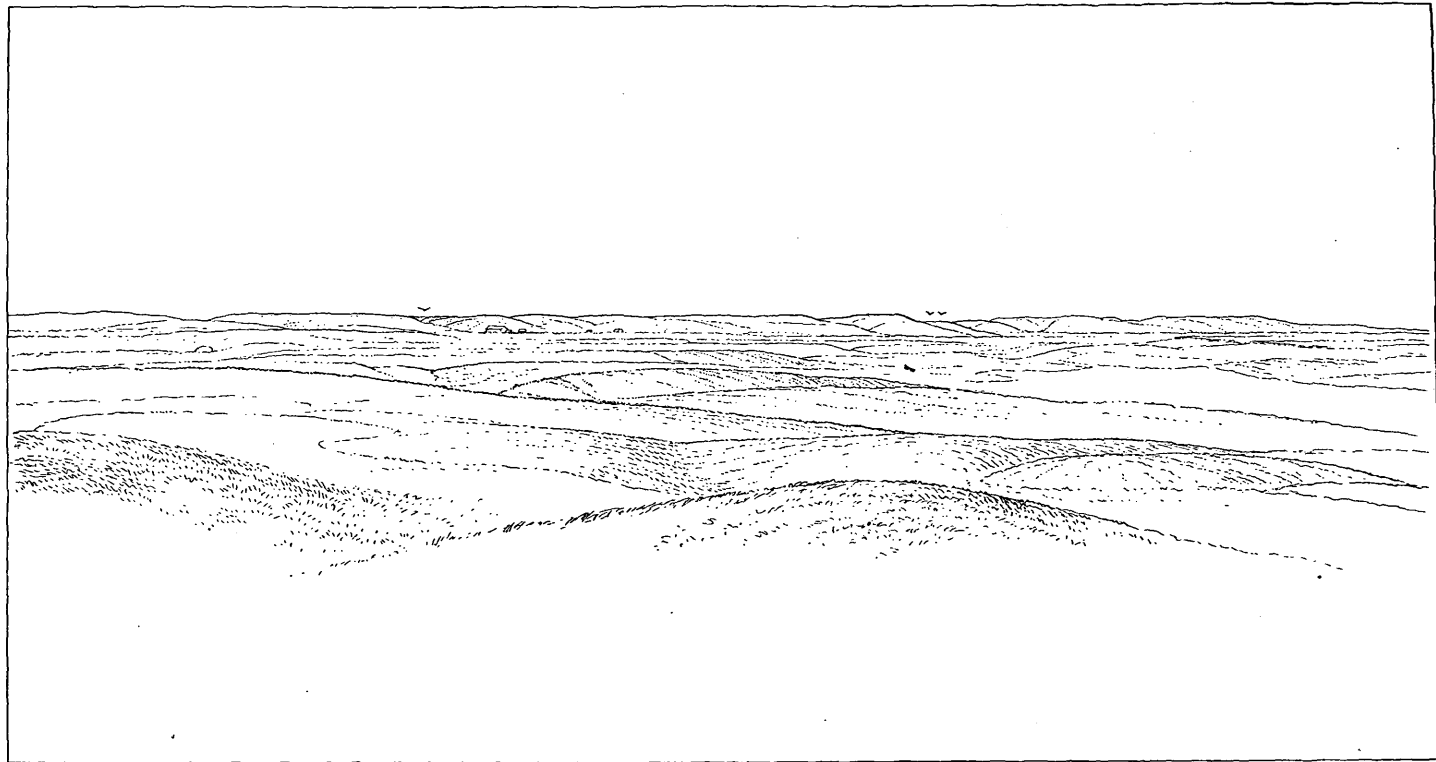


FIG. 2.—Map of Turtle Ridge and southwest Wessingtons.

This plain is considerably eroded near these streams. The top of Turtle Ridge is in several places rough and very stony, exhibiting the characters of a typical moraine. This is especially true toward its western side at the north end, and along the eastern side farther south. Among these knobs are frequent basins, some of them containing water.

A very remarkable feature in this ridge is a long, deep, narrow val-



VIEW OF TURTLE RIDGE FROM THE EAST.

v Wessington Spring Gulch. vv Gulch connected with ancient channel (see fig. 2 and Pl. III).

ley, with abrupt sides, extending from near the north end through the center of the ridge 6 or 7 miles toward the south. It then turns abruptly to the southwest and flows into Crow Lake. Tributary valleys beginning at the face of the hills, on either side, form with this central valley a complete drainage system. In the main channel are a few isolated domes 25 or 30 feet in height, apparently composed of gravel and boulders. At different places in the channel are basins containing water which form considerable lakes, and are not improbably the sources of supply for the springs before mentioned. Muskrat Lake is possibly the principal supply of the Wessington Spring. Some of the ancient water channels have recently been eroded by water flowing eastward, either upon the surface or by springs cutting backward into the hills. A conspicuous example is represented in Pl. III.

The general arrangement of the drainage system is shown in the accompanying map, fig. 2.

An interesting question which may be conveniently discussed at this point is: How much of these high portions of the moraine is due to glacial action and how much to pre-Glacial topography? Turtle

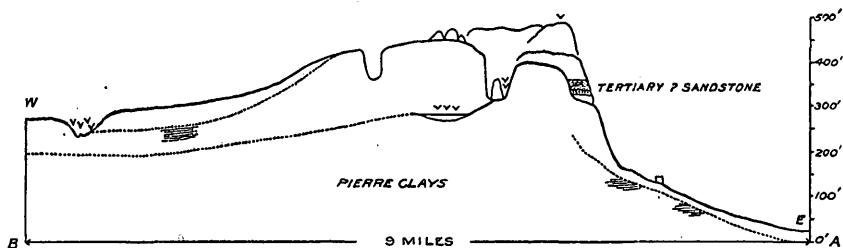


FIG. 3.—Transverse section of Turtle Ridge. v Turtle Point. vv Ancient channel leading to Crow Lake. vvv Crow Lake. vvvv Smith Creek.

Ridge affords several features which indicate that the glacial action has been the least efficient of the two—in other words, that the position and the greater portion of the mass are due to erosion antedating the glacier. As will be seen from the accompanying section fig. 3, there are exposures of sandstone in the east front of the hills in sec. 12, T. 107, R. 65. This sandstone is evidently similar to that capping the Bijou Hills and the buttes farther west. The deposit is not consolidated into a quartzite, as is usual in such localities, but shows similar structure even to the occasional occurrence of beds of grit between the finer layers.

Below the beds of sandstone are lead-colored clays, occasionally exposed in the deepest portions of the gulches. A more striking evidence of their existence is seen in the numerous landslides which have occurred near the various springs. The sulphurous ingredients of the waters are probably traceable also to the pyrites in the clays. Along the east foot of the ridge the drift is thin, and wells frequently reach the Cretaceous clay 15 to 20 feet below the surface.

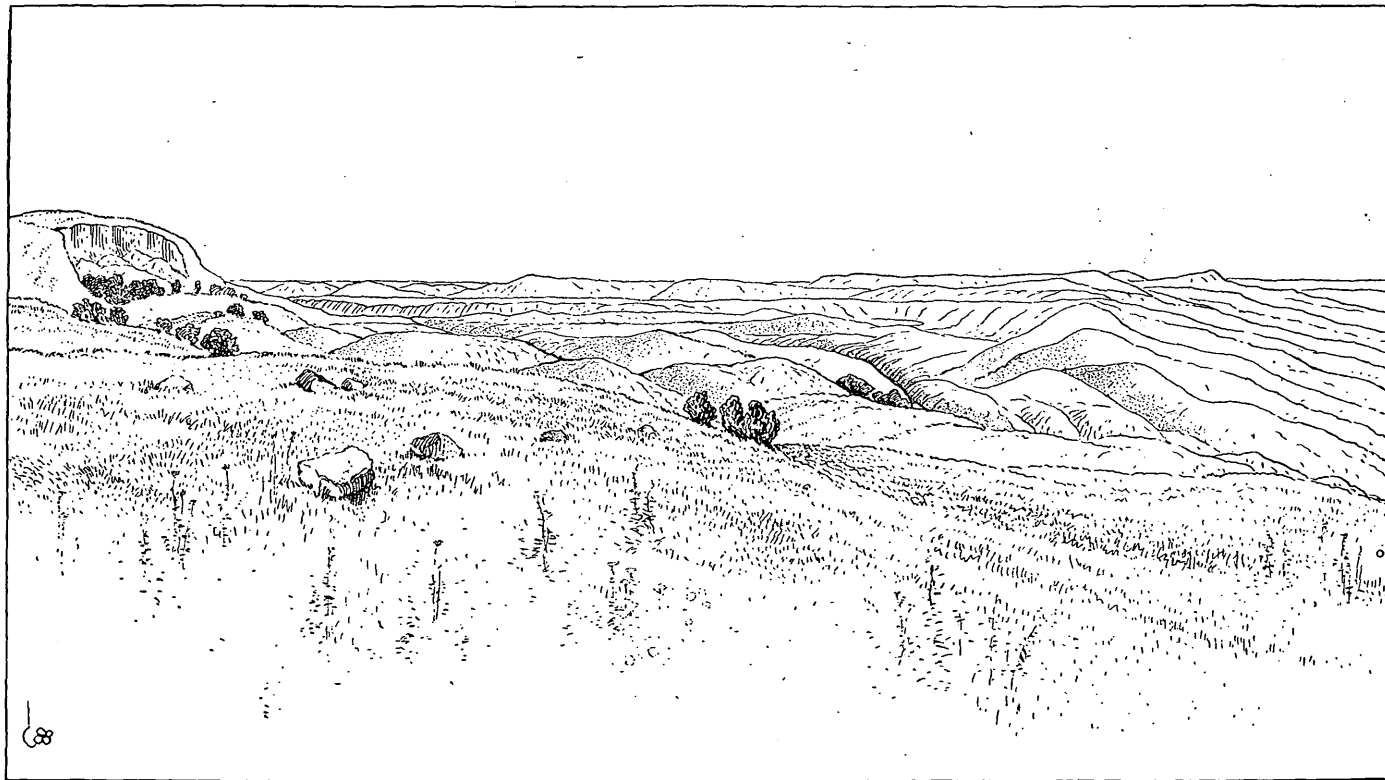
Another evidence of the influence of pre-Glacial topography is seen in the configuration of the country north of Turtle Ridge. Extending northwest is the edge of a terrace, quite distinctly marked, about 250 feet above the level of the plain on the east. This terrace is covered with drift, and its edge is seamed with gulches, which are faint imitations of those in Turtle Ridge. It also abounds in bowlders, some of considerable size. A ready explanation of this feature would be that it marks the former edge of a great valley, more commonly known as the James River Valley, and that the force of the ice sheet was sufficient to override this portion because of its lower altitude, while Turtle Ridge was able to hold its own against it.

Before proceeding further we may find illustrated in Turtle Ridge an interlobular moraine, as defined by Professor Chamberlin. It occupies the space between the shallower western lobe and the main body of the great Dakota lobe on the east. The internal drainage system already described was evidently occupied by superglacial streams which entered it from either lobe and drained through Crow Lake into the present valley of Smith Creek. That these streams were of considerable size is indicated by the fact that the breadth of some of the outlets upon the face of the moraine is from 150 to 200 yards. These valleys are flat bottomed, 90 to 100 feet in depth in the deepest portions. The gravel mounds before mentioned were possibly formed by eddies in the stream. A similar internal drainage is found in the Ree Hills, Bald Mountains, and other interlobular moraines. Muskrat Lake is apparently formed by the partial filling of the principal channel by material brought in by the main western branch.

Among the bowlders found scattered in the Turtle Ridge two very large limestone bowlders were noted on the east brow of the hills, one 9 by 7 by 2 feet, the other 20 by 9 by 2 feet. There are no bowlders of red quartzite, nor of local Tertiary quartzite and sandstones. Ordinary granite and greenstone bowlders abound.

Extending southward from near the middle of the east side of Turtle Ridge is a low morainic ridge, leaving it at a very small angle, and running 3 or 4 miles farther south, and subsiding gradually to the level of the eastern plain in the northern part of T. 105, R. 65. Between this and the principal range is a shallow valley occupied by the headwaters of the west branch of the Firesteel. This subordinate ridge is very stony. Whether the explanation of its existence may be similar to that of the terrace north of Turtle Ridge is uncertain. It seems not unlikely that it is a portion of a faint minor moraine found between the first moraine and the second, or it may be a subglacial moraine due to some unevenness in the floor over which the ice was moving.¹ Extending from a point about a mile south of Crow Lake to a point 3 or 4 miles west of White Lake, in a nearly direct line, is the axis of another high and massive ridge, which we will call the south.

¹ Cf. Dana, *Am. Jour. Sci.*, 3d series, Vol. XXVIII, p. 230.



VIEW OF OLD OVERFLOW CHANNEL IN TURTLE RIDGE.

Turtle Point on the right.

west Wessingtons. Its eastern face, like that of Turtle Ridge, is steep for about two-thirds of its height, then descends by gentle slope to the plain southeast. This range is highest in the middle, where it has an elevation of about 300 feet, in the vicinity of Ishams Lake. Its western slope is not more than half as steep as its eastern, and declines gradually to Smith Creek, about 5 miles northwest, where the stream is over 100 feet lower than White Lake in the plain east, inside of the moraine, fig. 11 (p. 37). While the range is massive, its summit is crowned with a few clusters of knobs, showing at a distance its morainic character. Among these knobs are the usual basins and ponds, the largest of which is Ishams Lake, sec. 16, T. 105, R. 66. Between Turtle Ridge and the southwest Wessingtons there is a broad sag, the summit of its bottom being about 100 feet above the plain southeast. In about the center of this pass or sag is a remarkable system of sharp, stony ridges from 10 to 30 feet in height, extending from near the southeast corner of T. 105, R. 66, in a curve corresponding to the lower portion of the sag to the southeastern part of Crow Lake. The general features of the system may be more fully understood from the accompanying map, fig. 4:

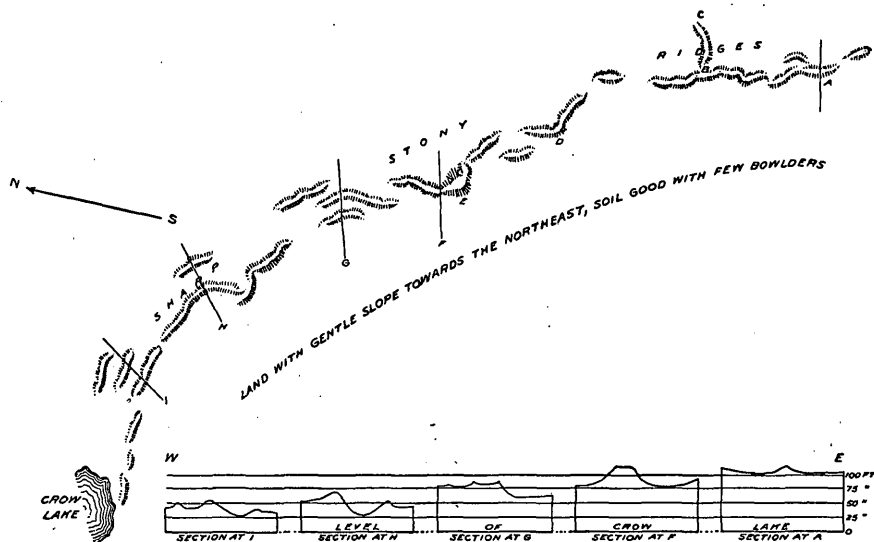


Fig. 4.—Map of osar-like ridges near Crow Lake.

These stony ridges are osar-like and are probably connected with former drainage from the ice sheet.

At the southern end of the southwest Wessingtons is a similar but less marked pass through the moraine, by which water probably escaped into a valley connecting with the head waters of Smith Creek. From this outlet the moraine is less conspicuous, evidently not having so high a pre-Glacial surface on which to rest. A scattered series of morainic hills may be traced southwest past Kimball to the middle of

the western side of T. 103, R. 68. This system of hills is from 2 to 5 miles in breadth, its inner and outer limits not being very clearly defined. Along its outer limit west of Kimball is a valley running southwest, connecting the valley of American Creek with Red Lake and the Missouri. The inner ranges of the moraine are but little higher than the subdued swells of the glacial topography upon that side. About 4 miles east of Kimball the railroad crosses two well-defined valleys, which head on the inside of the moraine. They doubtless indicate lines of drainage dating back to the time of the ice sheet. One of them connects with American Creek and the other with Smith Creek.

From near the middle of the west side of T. 103, R. 68, these morainic ridges begin to describe a semicircular curve toward the northwest, the outer range of which lies about along the east side of Red Lake. The principal ridge in the curve presents an abrupt and stony inner slope and a gentle outer slope, with few boulders. From the south-

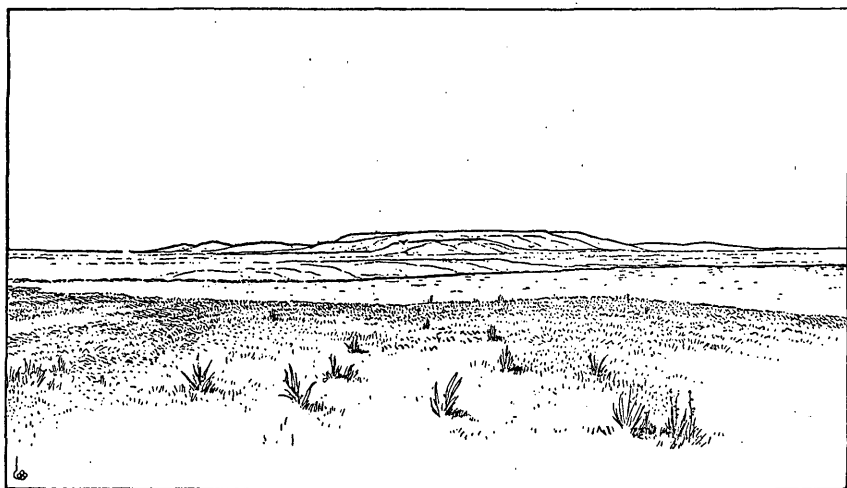


FIG. 5.—Portion of the moraine near Bijou Hills. v Moraine.

ern terminus of this semicircle, near the southern line of T. 103, R. 69, the moraine seems still less defined, but as it approaches the east end of the East Bijou it regains its character of broad, stony ridges separated by sags with ponds, the ridges being from 30 to 40 feet higher than the plain within. Lying against the eastern end of the East Bijou is a high north-and-south ridge over 100 feet in height (fig. 5), and apparently composed entirely of drift. South of the East Bijou the glacier at some time evidently pushed farther west, perhaps nearly to the western end, but such occupation was comparatively temporary. Masses of bowldery clay are found on the highest summit of the East Bijou, toward the south side and near the southwest angle of the hill. South of the Bijou Hills the moraine is again ill defined.

On or near the middle of the western line of T. 100, R. 69, is a well-

defined north-and-south ridge extending 2 or 3 miles. Its height is over 100 feet. Its northern end terminates rather abruptly amid a cluster of ponds of considerable size.

Extending inside of the principal portion of the moraine, from near the northwest corner of T. 101, R. 68, 7 or 8 miles, in a south-by-east direction, is a remarkable chain of lakes or lake beds occupying a broad, shallow valley. Southwest of the east end of the East Bijou is another cluster of lakes, with a valley connecting them with the head waters of Snake Creek. It is probable that these two systems of lakes occupy an old channel leading into Snake Creek.

Northwest, west, and south from the short ridge last described are lower stony ridges, which are doubtless a portion of the moraine. Besides these we find no trace of the moraine till we reach the hills around Cedar Creek, which occupy the central portion of T. 98, R. 68. The plain on the inside of the moraine is quite even, extending sharply down to the east bank of the Missouri. In it Pratt Creek has excavated a narrow valley about 200 feet in depth. East of its junction with the Missouri there is a high terrace, capped with an abundance of gravel and bowlderets.

FROM PRATT CREEK TO RUNNING WATER.

The Cedar Creek Hills receive their name from a very short stream called Cedar Creek, which is surrounded by them. They extend some-

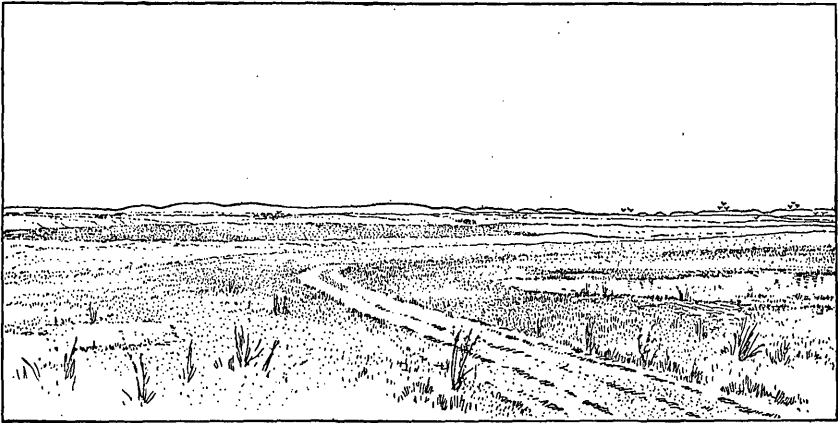


FIG. 6. —Cedar Creek Hills, from the north. v Pratt Creek. vv Missouri River. v v Driftless bluff.

what in the form of a V, with its apex pointing northeast and subsiding gradually into the plain on or near sec. 15, T. 98, R. 68 (fig. 6). The northwestern arm of the V, which is not very prominently developed, extends for 2 or 3 miles along the northern side of the stream. The southeastern arm extends in an irregular manner southward along the top of the east bank of the Missouri, connecting with the hills northeast of Wheeler. This continuation of the moraine has been under-

mined by an east bend of the river above Wheeler until apparently half of the moraine has been removed. Its appearance is shown in fig. 7. This view presents the nearest approach of the inside of the moraine to the Missouri River at any point between Pratt Creek and Choteau Creek.

From this point, which is on or near sec. 23, T. 97, R. 68, the inner line of the moraine may be described as follows: It extends east-southeast to the southwestern end of Lake Andes, thence from the southwest corner of sec. 12, T. 69, R. 65, near the south shore of Lake Andes southward along the east side of the township nearly to its southeastern corner, and thence south-southeast in nearly direct line to the middle of T. 94, R. 62.

The structure of the moraine through this portion is found to be a deep deposit of drift, overlapping hills of Cretaceous clay. The moraine

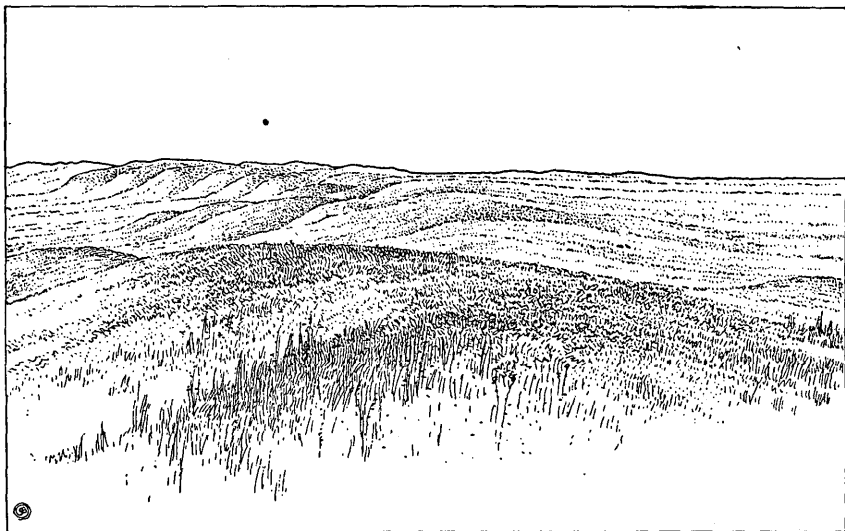
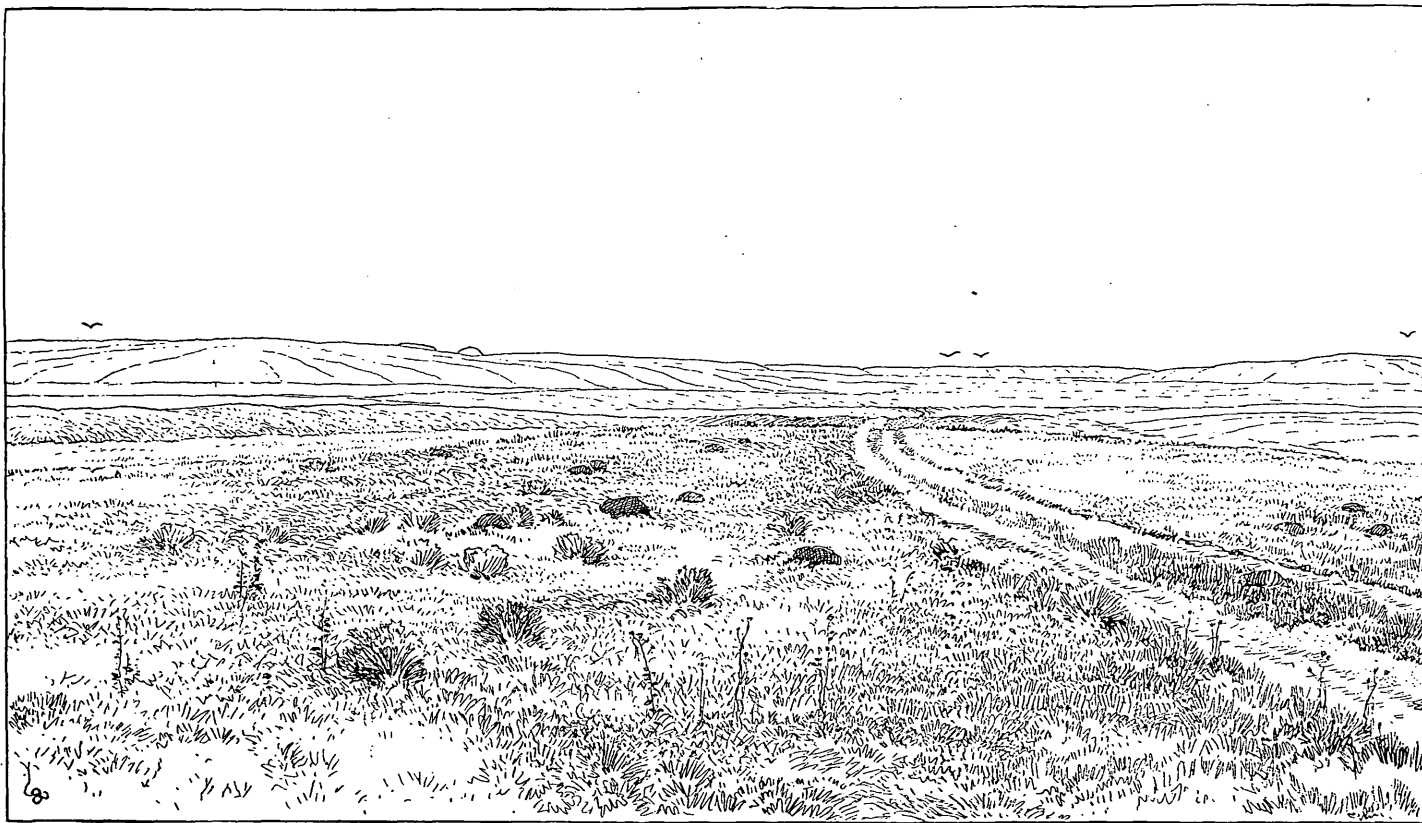


FIG. 7.—The moraine half eroded by the Missouri.

presents few knobs upon its surface. It may be described as a broad swell, with a somewhat abrupt slope toward the northeast and an irregular gentle slope toward the southwest, which latter is much seamed by short streams draining into the Missouri. It is interesting to find this portion of the moraine mapped as a ridge on Gen. G. K. Warren's map of 1857.

Through it are three important outlets, extending upon or a little below the level of the plain northeast. The first of these is now occupied by Pease Creek and another smaller stream. This outlet is from one-half mile to 2 miles in width, and is flat-bottomed, especially upon the western side, the eastern being occupied largely by a system of high, stony hills resembling osars. Another outlet is that extending southwest from the end of Lake Andes (Pl. IV). This also is occupied



LAKE ANDES OUTLET FROM THE NORTHEAST.

v Moraine. v v Bluffs across Missouri River, showing through Lake Andes Gap.

by a small stream, which flows along the western side, and also a dry drainage channel, a few feet in depth, from Lake Andes itself. The eastern side of this outlet also presents prominently the effects of running water, in the form of gravel terraces. Another less important outlet extends west-southwest from near sec. 25, T. 96, R. 65, till it joins the Andes Outlet before it reaches the river. From its relation to a grassy lake of considerable size northeast of it in the plain, I have called this Grass Lake Outlet. All of these outlets present the features of nearly straight troughs, with sides quite abrupt, especially the western. Their bottoms are in every case lower than the general level within the moraine, and slope more or less rapidly to the surface of the lower gravelly terrace described in Chapter V. Near the head waters of Sevenmile Creek, at the southwest corner of T. 96, R. 64, the moraine declines in elevation from 75 to 50 feet, and at the same time seems to broaden, and continues this character from this point to Choteau Creek. Several streams have their valleys heading in close to the northeast

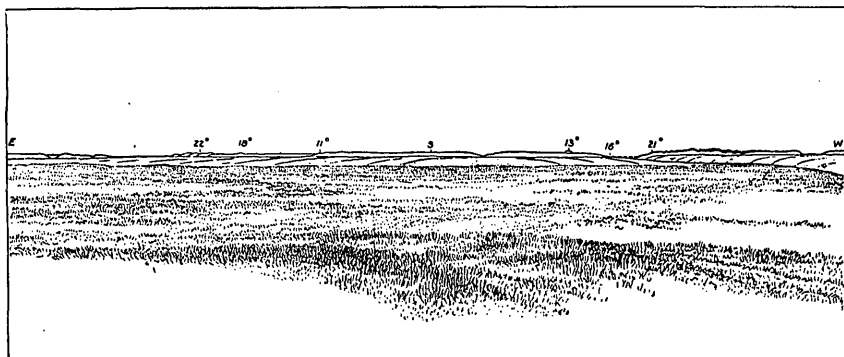


FIG. 8.—General view of the moraine from 2 miles south of Grandview. Numbers indicate degrees from south.

side of the moraine and probably were minor channels of overflow when the ice was forming the moraine. A distant and general view of this part of the moraine is shown in fig. 8.

A conspicuous point in this lower portion of the moraine is on or near sec. 30, T. 94, R. 62. It is situated some distance outside of the inner boundary of the moraine, so that it seems never, or very briefly, to have been covered by the ice. It presents the well-marked layers of the Bijou quartzite, lying in horizontal position, and scattered upon them numerous boulders of all kinds. Its altitude is quite definitely determined to be 1,675 feet.

A view from the summit of the moraine shows, in general, a gentle slope down to the level of a high terrace along the left bank of the Missouri. This terrace averages over 200 feet above the river.

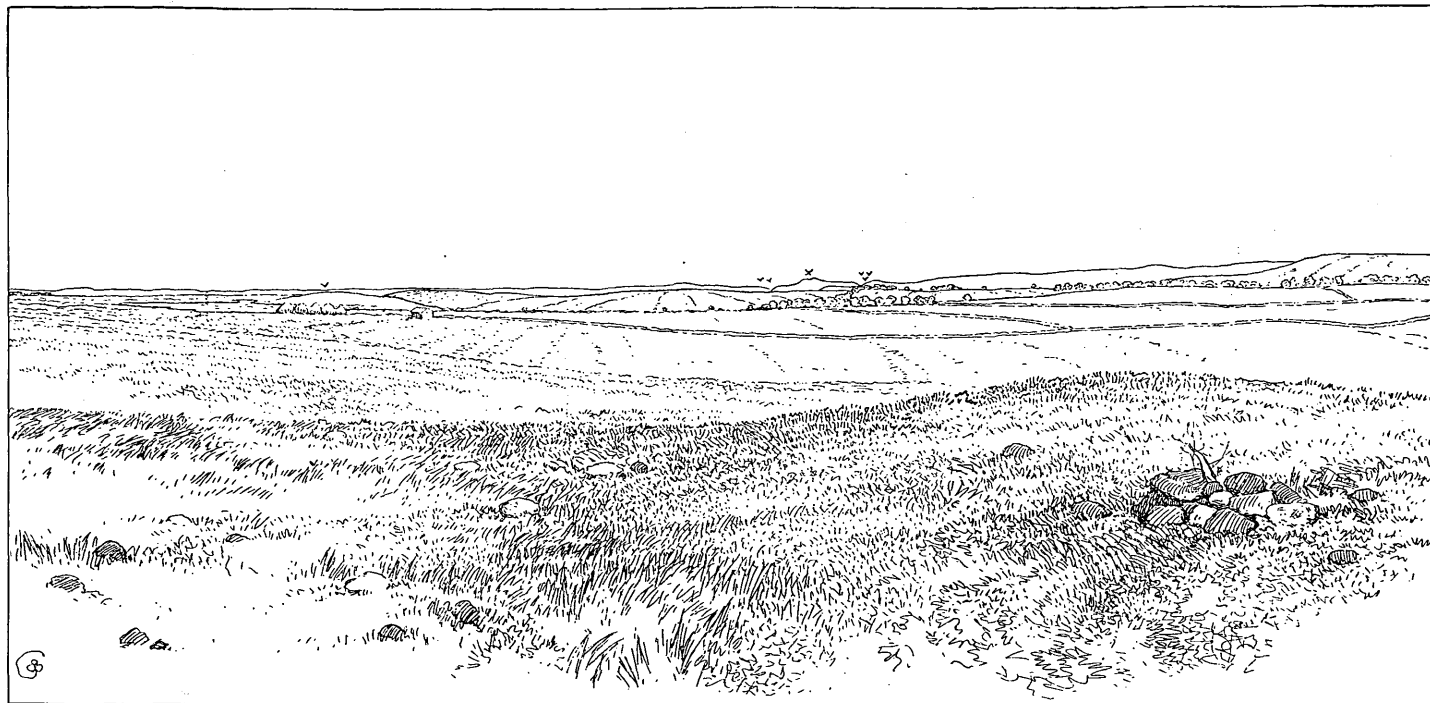
The valley of Choteau Creek, as it approaches the moraine, is from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 miles in width and flat bottomed, apparently marking another outlet, which, however, instead of going straight toward the Missouri, turns

eastward and joins a drainage valley from the interior of the Choteau Creek Hills. This latter valley, from the scantiness of water in it, is known as the Dry Choteau, while the more extended western branch is locally known as the Wet Choteau. The Choteau Creek Hills are a system of morainic hills surrounding the Dry Choteau. They extend north and south and are estimated to be 3 to 5 miles in width. Their northern end occupies the west half of T. 97, R. 61, and is surrounded with a broad, semicircular valley, in which rise the headwaters of Emanuel Creek on the east and an important branch of the Wet Choteau on the northwest. This valley is most abrupt on its outer side, and has a depth of 60 to 100 feet below the plain outside. The plain ends in a terrace-like edge, in some places considerably raised above the region farther back. This is markedly true of the portion east of the hills, near Aden post-office, sec. 1, T. 97, R. 61, where the surface suggests a minor moraine. The hills terminate southward in narrow but prominent ranges near the mouth of Dry Choteau. This is particularly true of hills on the east side of the system. East and southeast of that point there is a broad swell, evidently passed over by the ice and suggesting an advance of the ice farther west in its later occupation of the region. Perhaps the erosion of the waters escaping from the valley had removed the moraine on that side, so that the ice broke over the remainder into the drainage valley itself. That their location was probably predetermined by hills of Cretaceous clay is indicated by the reported occurrence of chalkstone some distance above their base at the northern end. This was not certainly determined to form a ledge, but was found in such quantity as to render it quite certain that such was the case. Several important lakes and marshes occur in the hills.

The ice sheet evidently very nearly surrounded these hills, as the small lobe extending east of them pushed through quite to Choteau Creek in T. 93, R. 61. It also reached nearly to the present course of the Missouri. There are, however, high northwest-southeast ridges extending from near the mouth of Choteau Creek to sec. 3, T. 92, R. 61, where they are more developed than farther west, rising over 150 feet above the plain to the northeast and estimated to be fully 400 feet above the river to the north. They are so cut by ravines from the river as to make their morainic character somewhat questionable. Fortunately, in an old well evidence was found of an ancient pond upon this hill, containing specimens of fresh-water shells and having every appearance of a morainic basin, which had been filled with earth 8 or 10 feet in depth.

EMANUEL CREEK GAP.

From this point no trace of anything that can be called a moraine is found until we reach the bluffs about 5 miles east of Bonhomme. Over this region, on the north side of the river, the plain, gently undulating, gradually subsides to the level of the lower, bowldery terrace,



JAMES RIDGE FROM THE NORTH.

x Mount Pisgah. v Exit of James River through moraine. vv Exit of Beaver Creek. yy Entrance of Beaver Creek.

which has an altitude of about 200 feet above the river. The surface is somewhat lower in the vicinity of Springfield. North of Bonhomme, in the valley of Snatch Creek, the general surface is still more depressed, and abounds in low bowldery knobs. It suggests the filling of a pre-Glacial valley. This is further indicated by a gap in the chalk bluffs along the north side of the Missouri.

Upon the south side of the river, back from the bars and bottom land immediately adjacent to the channel, is a strip of country from 2 to 4 miles in width displaying very little drift, and underlain by chalkstone below and Cretaceous clays above, with much sand, probably of Loup Fork epoch, still higher. This region is very much eroded by small streams running north to the river. South of this strip of country there rises abruptly the northern edge of a table-land, built of beds of sand and gravel below and of loess with a few scattered bowlders above. The loess is much eroded, but its valleys extend away from the river into the branches of Bazile Creek. One peculiar feature of the northern edge of this table-land is the projection of high ridges of the loess extending $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 miles northwest, without diminishing in altitude, over the Cretaceous region before described.

It seems clear that in this gap of the moraine we have trace of a relation of ice sheet and river similar to that which existed between the Bijou Hills and the Cedar Creek Hills, though on a vaster scale: with the difference, however, that in that case the water was flowing rapidly transversely to the motion of the ice, while in this case it was, perhaps, discharging more in the same direction.

FROM BONHOMME TO SPIRIT MOUND.

The moraine appears on the north bank of the river, about 5 miles east of Bonhomme, in a high, broad swell, extending from the southwest toward the northeast, past Lakeport, which is situated on the inner crest of the moraine; but it rather abruptly turns eastward and declines in height near the center of T. 94, R. 57, where there seems to have been a broad outlet, or perhaps a tongue of the ice in the place now corresponding to the upper valley of Beaver Creek. Later there seems to have been much water flowing southeast over this area.

Near Lesterville a considerable cluster of morainic hills again appears, about 50 feet in height above the plain around them. These seem to be an interlobular portion of the moraine between the broad valley to the south and a narrower valley coming in from the north along their east side, or else a local development of a later moraine not usually appearing, possibly an earlier portion of the second moraine.

Again, beginning near the southeast corner of T. 96, R. 57, a high, sharp, continuous ridge extends in a nearly direct line to sec. 12, T. 94, R. 56, where it quite abruptly declines in height, apparently having been washed away by water from the west. Through this range is an interesting gap through which Beaver Creek crosses it toward the east,

upon sec. 28, T. 95, R. 56. South of this is a conspicuous peak, locally known as Mount Pisgah. An interesting drainage channel at high level crosses the moraine north of the gap on the west lines of secs. 16 and 21, T. 95, R. 66. A conspicuous view of this portion of the moraine from the inside is given in Pl. V, and from the outside in fig. 9. Another drainage channel at higher level runs south obliquely across it along the west line of sec. 16, T. 95, R. 56.

A few morainic points in a ridge running east-west, northeast of Lakeport, suggests the idea that the broad gap south of Lesterville may at one time have been occupied by a small lobe from the ice sheet west. The highlands west of Yankton descend in a long, gentle slope from the vicinity of Lakeport to Yankton. This slope is traversed by valleys extending south of east which bear traces of running water. There are gravelly knolls and terraces, especially toward the foot of the slope. From the gap east of Lesterville extends a broad valley, running southeast. Just southwest of James Ridge this also opens

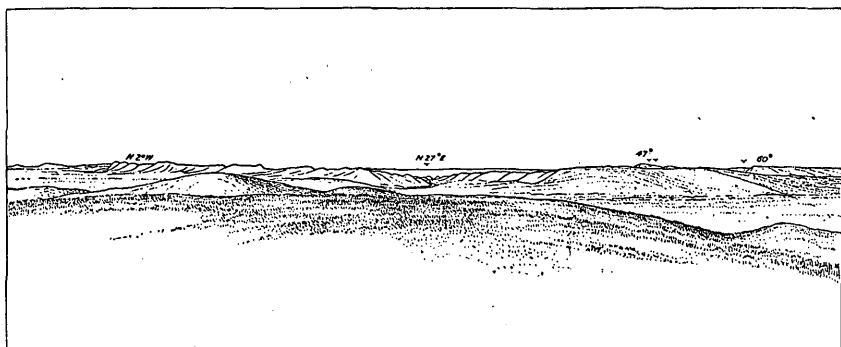
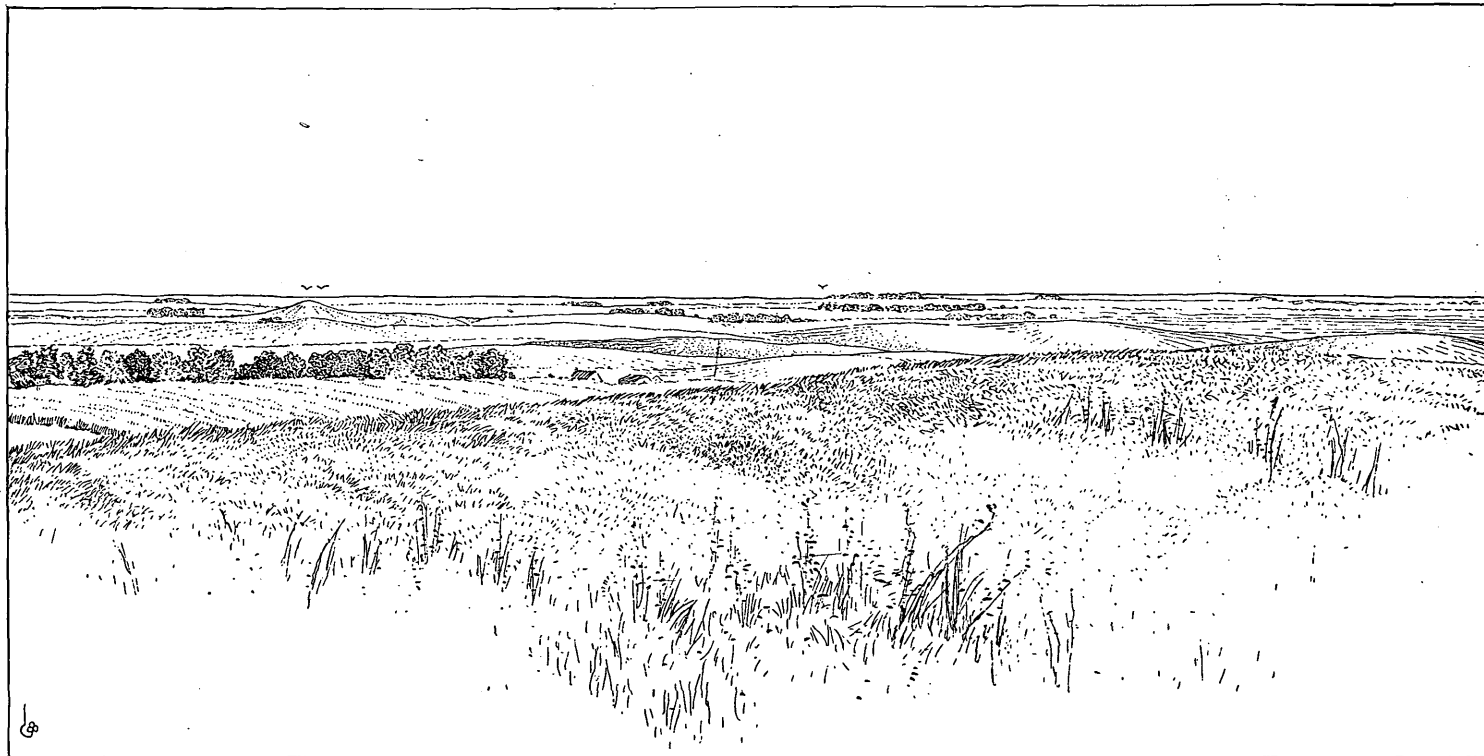


FIG. 9.—James Ridge, from the west. v Beaver Creek. vv Mount Pisgah.

toward the southeast upon a broad gravelly terrace, through which Beaver Creek in its lower portion has excavated a deep valley. James Ridge in its northern half seems to have been a narrow interlobular portion of the moraine. A lower bowldery ridge, somewhat detached, skirts its northern end much as in the case of the Choteau Creek Hills.

From a consideration of the topography of the gorge-like character of the trough of the Missouri from Bonhomme to Yankton, of the occurrence of blowing wells near Utica, and of the finding of fragments of quartzite like that of the Bijou Hills at the south end of James Ridge, it seems probable that before the advent of the glacier the Missouri, or rather the Niobrara, flowed northeast from Springfield and thence eastward north of Lakeport and Yankton to join the main river northwest of the latter place.

Extending along the east side of James Ridge, separated from it on the south by Beaver Creek, and turning east from the southern end of the higher part of James Ridge, is a morainic ridge, at one time thought to be a part of the outer moraine, but a more satisfactory



THE ATTENUATED MORaine NEAR VERMILION RIVER.

v Missou River. vv Spirit Mound.

interpretation makes it a part of the second moraine, under which head it is further discussed.

East of Clay Creek morainic ridges appear again on or near sec. 26, T. 95, R. 54, where they are well developed along the east branch of Clay Creek.

From this point the more or less morainic west slope of the highland runs nearly northwest to the southeast corner of T. 98, R. 55. The west branch of Clay Creek flows along southwest of it in a southeasterly direction. Along the east branch of Clay Creek the chalkstone of the Niobrara group appears high up in the hills, rising some 80 feet above the waters of the stream. It is finely exposed as far north as sec. 17, T. 95, R. 54.

In the vicinity of Childstown post-office the moraine swings in a curve east, northeast, and finally around southeast along the west side of Turkey Ridge Creek, extending approximately parallel with the moraine just described, and forming with it a broad, high ridge, from 4 to 6 miles in breadth. Its eastern limit, corresponding to the inside of the moraine, extends from Spring Valley post-office, east of Irene, to the vicinity of Wakonda, then more southward and then southeasterly into the northwest corner of T. 93, R. 52, where it turns more east, declines in height, and becomes broken into detached hills, the last of which is Spirit Mound (Pl. VI).

This is a picturesque peak, rising nearly 125 feet above the level of the plain, upon sec. 14, T. 93, R. 52.

Turkey Ridge.—Turkey Ridge exhibits the usual features of interlobular moraines. It shows a core of Cretaceous chalkstone and clay, above which there generally seems to be a mantle of fine deposits, possibly eolian, probably of Tertiary age. In some places this is a fine silt, resembling loess, but more generally it is very fine sand. Some of it may have been derived from glacial action, deposited before the ice sheet covered this point. Above this rests a much thicker mantle of till, 50 to 200 feet thick, except where cut through by erosion. No trace of a composite character has been found in this, though it has been penetrated at many parts by deep wells. The more reliable source of water is the fine sand or chalk below. The water in the two may be confluent.

The main internal drainage channel is Turkey Creek, which evidently received its waters from the east side, where two prominent cols are found, one at an elevation of about 1,450 feet above sea level in sec. 30, T. 97, R. 54, another at an elevation of about 1,318 feet, a little south of Irene. Both of these, especially the latter, have been cut down nearly 100 feet since they were first traversed by the water. Traces of drainage from the west are found at two or three points, but the ice there was lower and soon the drainage was along the line of Clay Creek, which ran along the west side of the interlobular moraine. These two channels converge to the vicinity of Volin. Turkey Creek has a

naturally narrow valley, bounded by chalk cliffs rising from 50 to 100 feet above the water. Turkey Ridge is about 24 miles long and from 5 to 7 miles wide. Its surface is not very rough. Most of it is easily tilled, though in some places it is very stony. The prevailing stone is red quartzite. Its highest point is about 1,750 feet above tide, on sec. 5, T. 97, R. 55. From that place it declines quite regularly to about 1,400 feet for 2 or 3 miles west of Wakonda. A plan of it is given in Pl. VII; see also sections E-F and I-K with the general map (Pl. I). This is derived from the topographical survey of the United States Geological Survey made in 1896. In the later stages of the occupation of the moraine, as the ice thinned, the internal drainage ceased and the Vermilion lobe discharged along the line beginning in the eastern part of T. 97, R. 59, and extending to 2 miles west of Viborg, passing through the west side of T. 92, R. 52, thence nearly due south to sec. 9, T. 94, R. 52, thence southeast to the Vermilion River, passing just west of Spirit Mound.

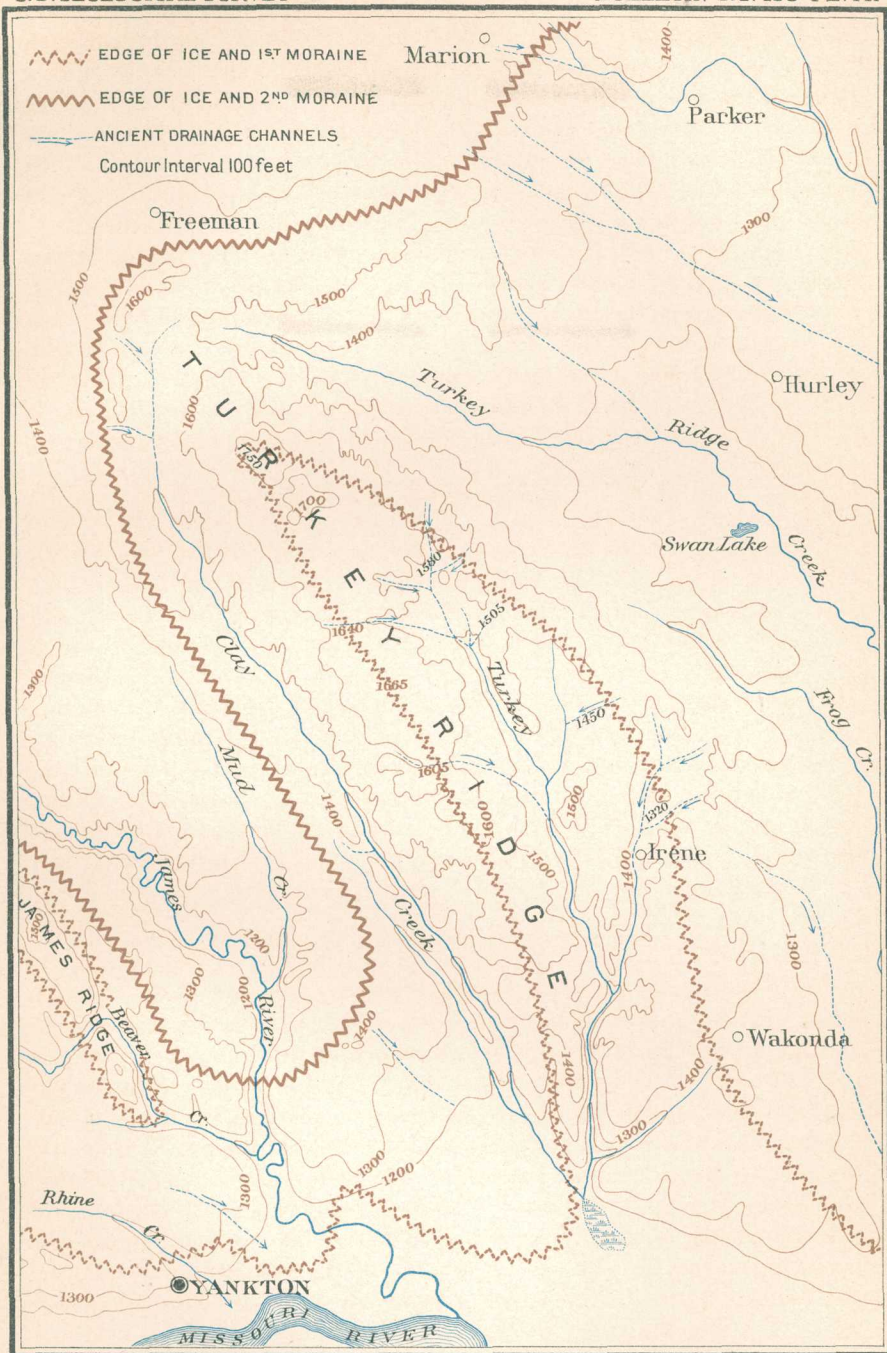
VERMILION GAP.

From this point there is a gap in the moraine about 8 miles in width. It is occupied by the very level plain along the Vermilion River. This plain extends southward and ends as a high terrace, the southern end of which extends from the mouth of the Vermilion nearly due east to the Big Sioux. It rises about 100 feet above the Missouri. This terrace, as exposed by cuts in the vicinity of Vermilion, is composed of blue boulder clay below, containing pockets of sand, and passing above into yellow pebble clay, and this is capped in places with a silt indistinguishable from loess. The surface of this terrace frequently exhibits basins similar to those found upon till; and from the relation of the terrace to the moraine it was probably occupied by a narrow tongue of ice running down the pre-Glacial Vermilion Valley into the Missouri.

FROM BRULE CREEK TO CANTON.

Along the west bank of Brule Creek, as far south as sec. 13, T. 92, R. 50, and still more prominent in the northwest corner of T. 93, R. 50, and the southwest corner of the township north, the moraine appears in a few scattered knobs of drift. Between these hills are evidently overflow channels from the plain northeast to the valley of Brule Creek. Some of their outlets are partially occupied by small lakes. These hills toward the north become connected into a broad swell composed of boulder clay, which rises and broadens toward the north and extends past Beresford, situated upon its summit, thence north and northeast to the middle of the southern line of T. 98, R. 49, where it terminates abruptly, overlooking a broad valley, which slopes from the plain northwest down into the valley of the Big Sioux at Canton.

This portion of the moraine is not traversed by overflow channels of any considerable size, at least none have eroded the moraine very deeply.



MAP OF TURKEY RIDGE, BY J. E. TODD, 1898.

A. Hoen & Co. Lith. Baltimore.

There are, moreover, few knobs or morainic points exhibited by this portion of the moraine. It forms the western edge of a highland region occupying the whole area between it and the Big Sioux River on the east. This highland region is uniformly covered, especially upon the hilltops, with loess, some of the points of it rising higher than the nearer portions of the moraine. Branches of Brule Creek and the Big Sioux have eroded the whole surface of this highland so that the height of the hills above the valleys is often more than 150 feet. That there was more or less overflow across the moraine is indicated by numerous broad, marshy valleys extending from the summit of the moraine southward into Brule Creek. This is especially true in the vicinity of Beresford and south of Canton. At the northern end of the highland region it rises about 300 feet above the Big Sioux, and the valleys heading near the moraine are narrower and deeper than those farther south.

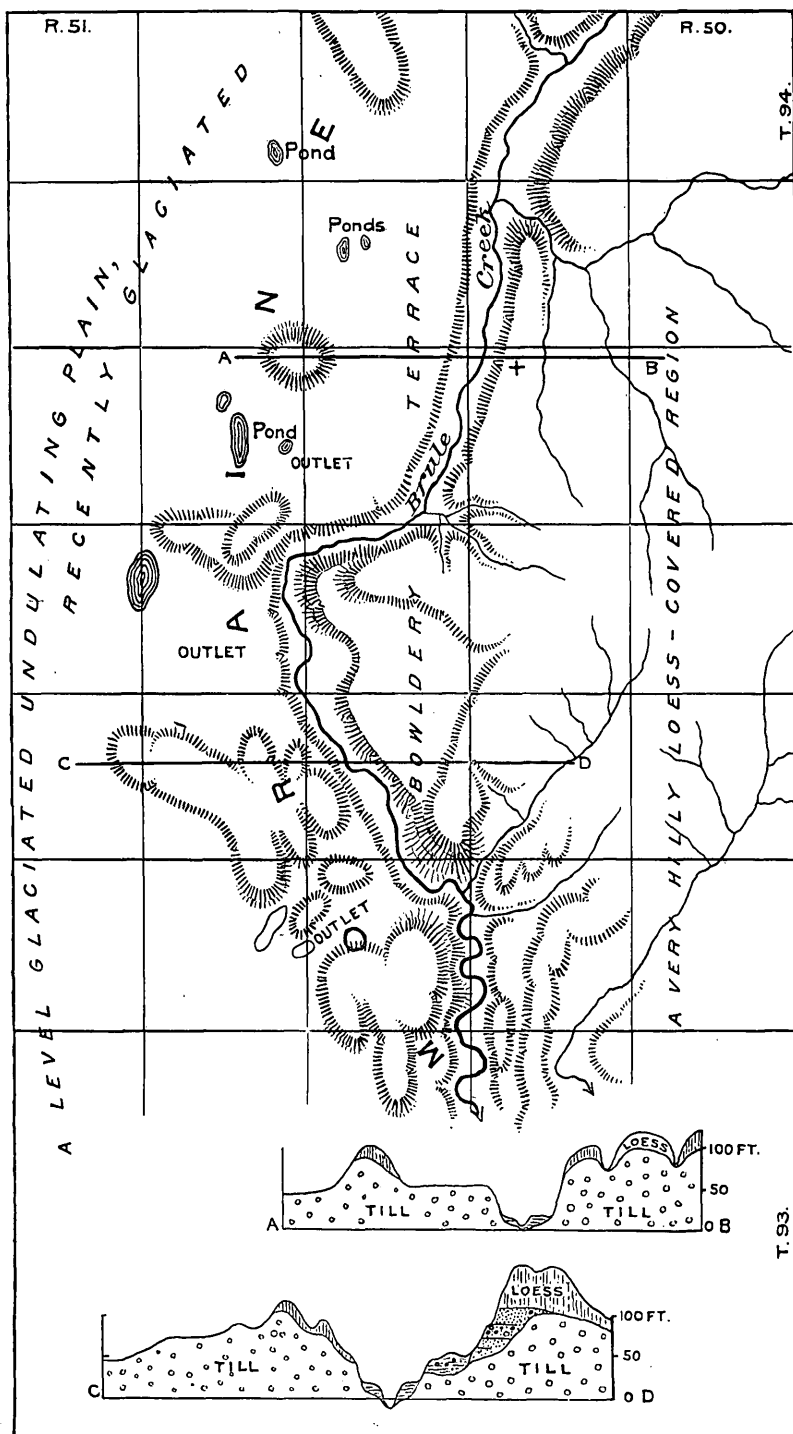
One of the most instructive portions of the moraine in this region, and indeed in any region, is that lying along the west side of Brule Creek, through Ts. 94, 93, and 92, R. 50. In the northern part of the first mentioned the moraine has the same features as near Beresford, and passes gradually into the eroded highland region farther east. This ends in sec. 17, and farther south there is an alternation of drainage channels with boulder knobs. This is represented in part in Pl. VIII. These outlet channels are upon the same level as the plain farther west, and from 30 to 50 feet above the water in Brule Creek. In some of the wider it would seem that the ice occupied the channel and left ponds and boulders over the surface, as in the common glaciated areas. These knobs rise over 100 and 150 feet above the creek and from 60 to 70 feet above the surrounding plain. The channels are not all upon the same level, but are deeper toward the south. Their eastern surface is mantled with loam, indistinguishable from loess. It has not been found, however, more than 5 or 6 feet deep, and it is not difficult to account for the numerous cases by eolian action in time of northwest winds. East of the creek the till rises to about the same level as that which forms the body of these knobs. At several points along the creek, and 50 to 70 feet above it, there are thick deposits of sand and gravel directly underlying the loess, which is much deeper upon the eastern side of the creek. The relation is shown in one of the sections in Pl. VIII. Between secs. 8 and 9, T. 93, R. 50, the stream flows through a narrow gorge which seems to owe its character partly to the slipping masses of loess. From that point to secs. 24 and 25, T. 92, R. 50, there is no morainic material west of the creek, but at the latter point the hills again appear very distinctly on the west side of the creek. It is evident that Brule Creek began its course when the ice occupied the Vermilion Valley as far south as the Missouri, and that the ice rose nearly or quite as high as the general level of the loess farther east. The question presents itself whether the water during the early occupation of the moraine flowed as high as that level, so as to dis-

charge eastward over the loess of Brule Creek. There are some things, both at this point and in the vicinity of Fairview, which seem to indicate this condition. For example, the width of Brule Creek between secs. 8 and 9, T. 93, R. 50, seems too narrow for the width of the valley farther north and the numerous outlets leading to it. Again, south of Beresford, but more north of that place, while there are no prominent drainage channels, there are shallow ones which cross the moraine at a high altitude, some of them as high as and even higher than the level of the loess farther east. Moreover, northeast of Beresford there is a peculiar mingling of boulder knolls and loess, as if the loess portion of it had been deposited in the valleys of the till.

BIG SIOUX GAP.

From the northern end of the highland south of Canton to the highland south of Sioux Falls, on sec. 29, T. 101, R. 48, we have again a depauperated portion of the moraine. It is only represented by a few isolated hills lying along the west bank of the Big Sioux. They present at first sight the peculiar phenomenon of detached portions of the table-lands east of the Big Sioux. They rise to nearly the same height and are about 150 feet above the plain to the west. The first of these is about 1 mile northeast of Canton—a low hill composed largely of gravel, rising about 150 feet above the river. The second is a much more important hill, occupying much of sec. 6, T. 98, R. 48; the third a hill occupying sec. 20, T. 99, R. 48; the fourth, in or near sec. 15, T. 100, R. 49. These hills are composed of drift, and when of any size show basins indicating their morainic character. Between the highland south of Canton and the hill northeast there is a broad incline from the plain on the northwest to the level of the Big Sioux. Upon this slope two or three terraces may be traced. The plain on the northwest rises about 130 feet above the river. Continuous with the higher of these terraces, which is the more stony, is a long bowldery terrace extending down the Big Sioux, and gradually declining in altitude to the valley of the Rock River. It reminds one of the terrace on the Missouri extending from the mouth of Pratt Creek southward. The valley of the Big Sioux here is narrower, apparently not more than half the width of the Rock River. This is especially true in the vicinity of Fairview. This suggests its recent excavation, perhaps during the later occupation of the principal moraine.

North of Canton the plain to the west comes up quite sharply to the valley of the river, leaving a terrace-like edge, except in the vicinity of small streams emptying into the Sioux. East of the Sioux, as before intimated, the general level is from 200 to 250 feet above the river. No trace of Cretaceous clays was clearly noted along the Big Sioux above Canton till the northwest corner of Iowa was nearly reached. It is probable that they rise from 25 to 50 feet above the present stream. Northwest of Canton the chalkstone of the Niobrara group occupies



DETAILS OF THE MORAINE IN UNION COUNTY, SOUTH DAKOTA.

the bank of a small stream at a height of nearly 100 feet above the Big Sioux. There seems to be no evidence that any portion of the east bluffs of the Big Sioux represents any part of the moraine.

FROM THE BIG SIOUX TO VERMILION POINT.

Beginning on the west side of the Big Sioux, about a mile north of the northern boundary of Iowa, a high massive ridge begins to extend westward and southwestward around the Great Bend of the Big Sioux, and continues its westerly course to near the southwest corner of T. 101, R. 51. Thence curving northward, it crosses the Chicago, St. Paul, Minneapolis and Omaha Railway about 4 miles east of Montrose, then closely follows the east side of the East Vermilion, crossing the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway west of Winfred, and continues in that direction to a point about 12 miles northwest of Mad-

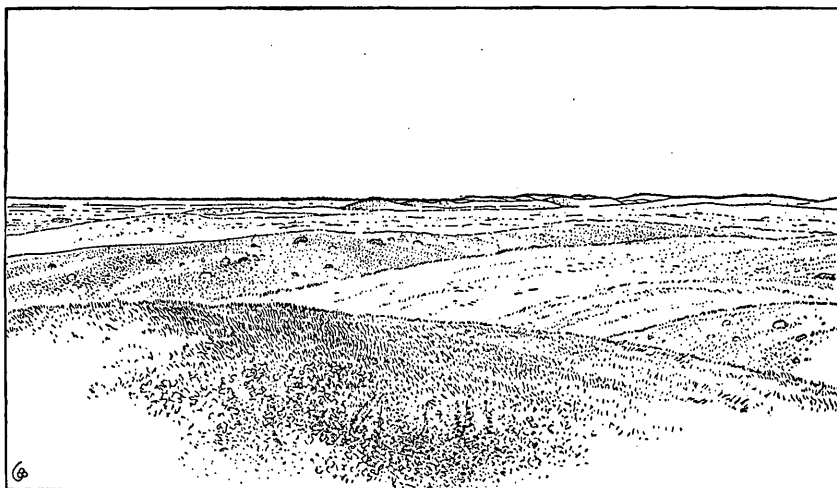


FIG. 10.—Inner slope of the moraine south of Wall Lake.

ison. The line indicated marks its inner slope. Its outer slope is less distinctly marked, being irregular, but usually with slight descent toward the north and east. Of the portion just traced, that immediately south of the bend of the Big Sioux is the lowest, rising only about 120 feet above the water in the river. It bears traces of several drainage channels, as though considerable water had been discharged northward from this point. About 3 miles southeast of Sioux Falls is the highest point east of the bend. It rises about 265 feet above the river to the east, or 165 feet above the Chicago, Milwaukee, St. Paul and Omaha station at Sioux Falls. In this elevated portion the moraine has been least modified, and therefore shows its usual characteristics—stony knobs and ridges, with ponds. The moraine has been crossed in the vicinity of Wall Lake, east of Montrose and east of Winfred. At the first of these points its height is 175 feet above the plain to the south-

west. East of Montrose and east of Winfred the altitude is about 200 feet. At all of these points the inner surface of the moraine is very stony and unusually marked with knobs, which are more numerous upon the inner slope than upon the summit of the moraine (fig. 10).

As one looks from the moraine toward the outside the view is like that of a plain, with numerous ponds in places. Elsewhere these ponds seem to have been drained by shallow channels of erosion, connecting with Skunk Creek. These channels are not uniformly from the inner surface of the moraine outward, but often parallel to it, or even occasionally flowing toward it. In these shallow valleys are sometimes found systems of elongated, sharp, stony ridges. One example was noted along a branch of Skunk Creek in the southwest corner of T. 101, R. 50. Another and more extensive system is found about 5 miles from Montrose, leading from a shallow gap in the moraine and extending to a branch of Skunk Creek. (Pls. IX and X.) A fuller description will be given in a later chapter.

The outer surface of the moraine gently declines to the surface of an undulating plain traversed by channels too large for their present streams. This portion of the moraine has no deep outlet channels traversing it. Its summit is not very rough, but from Hartford to Russell it is from 8 to 10 miles wide, and its outer slope abounds in prominent stony knobs and ridges interspersed with lakes.

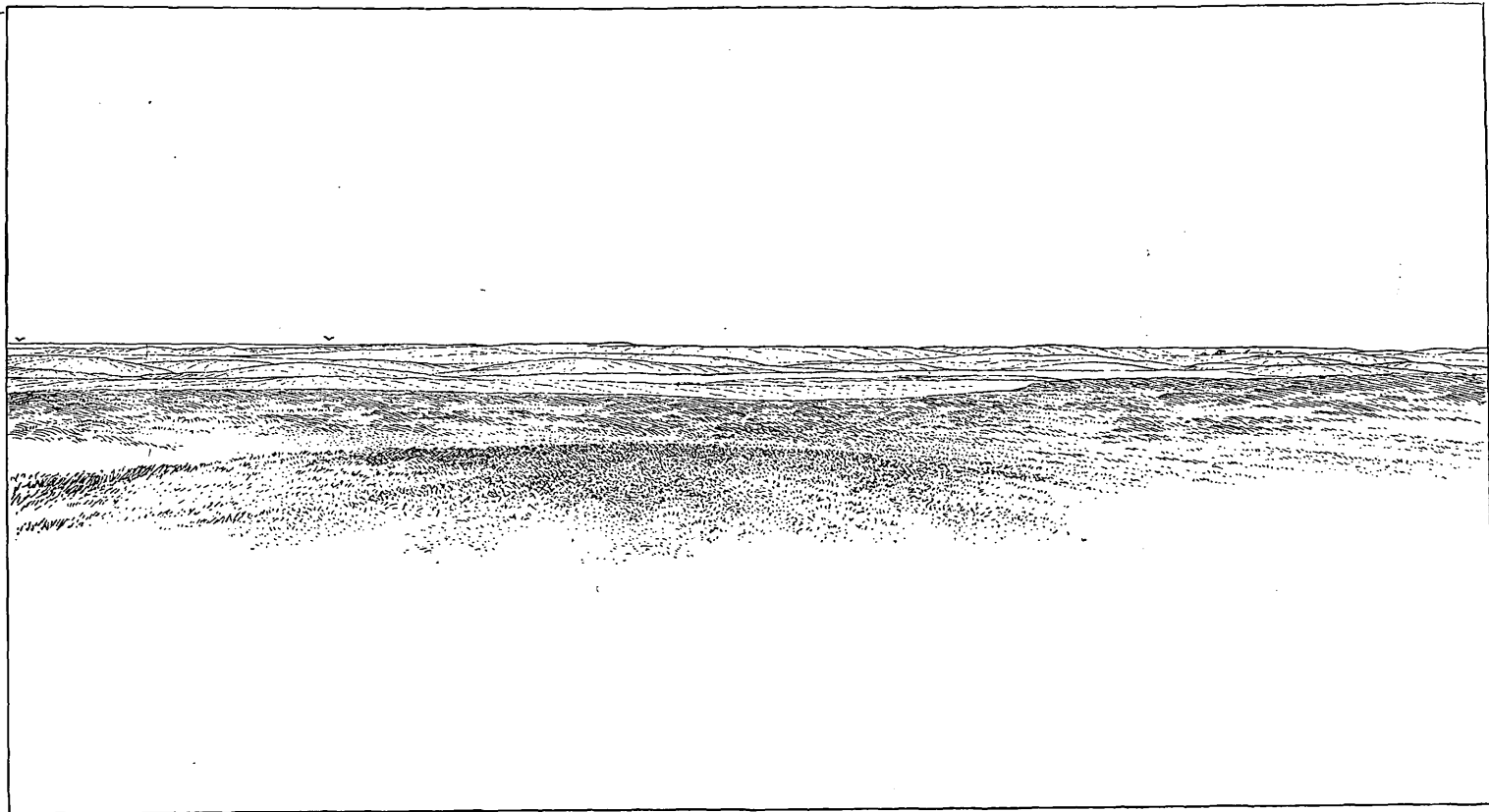
Vermilion Point is the termination of Vermilion Ridge, where it gradually subsides into the undulating plain on the north. Instead of resting upon the edge of an elevated terrace like Turtle Point, it lies on a plain running eastward. For this reason it is not nearly so prominent.

This completes the tracing of the outer moraine in the region chosen for consideration.

From Vermilion Point the moraine turns sharply east and northeast, and after crossing Battle Creek about 6 miles south of Madison, it quickly turns to a northerly course and passes 4 or 5 miles west of Volga. The southern side of this loop is slightly developed, or much eroded, but the eastern is very rough. It does not present the appearance of a broad swell, as in much of its course, but a disorderly mingling of frowning knobs and ridges, with narrow and broad channels which are frequently studded with lakes. The outer boundary of the moraine in this portion is marked by the northeasterly portion of Battle Creek and the flood plain of the Big Sioux farther north.

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE MORAINE.

The term *moraine*, although already frequently used in this paper, has not been clearly defined. It is a word introduced from the French, but may be traced with the Italian *mora*, a heap of stone, and the Spanish *moron*, hill or hillock, to the Latin *murus*, which not only has the primary meaning of "wall," but also "dam," "edge of a pot," etc.



CHANNEL, LAKE, AND OSAR RIDGES NORTHEAST OF MONTROSE.

v v Plain inside or west of the moraine.

Both wall and rim of a pot are instructive comparisons in forming an idea of moraine as used in this paper.

Moraine, as commonly used, includes all the *débris*, bowlders, pebbles, sand, and clay which is transported and deposited in various situations by a glacier. The moraine of which we speak in these pages is always the system of hills believed to have been heaped up around the edge of an ice sheet. Such hills are recognized as belonging to the moraine more by their relative position than by any one character which they bear individually. Each one is usually circular or lengthened parallel with the course of the system, abounds in bowlders, and has quite abrupt sides, but none of these characters are always found.

As a system the moraine usually presents these stony, knobby hills, mingled confusedly with circular and winding basins, which often contain water, but sometimes both basins and hills are very faintly developed, so that the whole constitutes a broad swell. The moraine is traversed here and there by transverse valleys, by which water escapes from the ice sheet. These may be of trifling size or many rods in width and cutting down through the whole height of the moraine.

The height of the moraine at any point is due, first, to the relative elevation of the pre-Glacial surface; second, to the amount of material pushed forward, which itself depends upon the pushing power of the glacier and the time its edge remains stationary; third, to the amount of material washed away; and, fourth, to the consistency of the material. Excess of clay or sand tends to produce a low and even moraine, while excess of stony material is favorable to the formation of a high and rugged moraine.

STRUCTURE AND POSITION.

A cross section of the moraine where least modified is a broad, low scalene triangle, the shorter side being inside, the longer, considerably

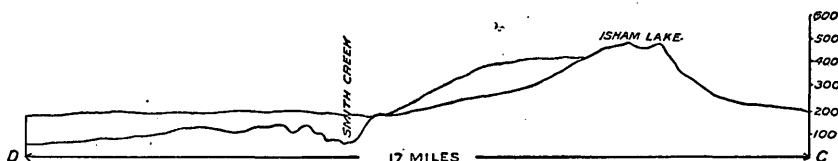


FIG. 11.—Section of southwest Wessingtons.

less abrupt, being outside. Much of the moraine, however, is so modified that these features do not appear. Portions best illustrating the character mentioned are found where the moraine is neither doubled upon itself nor closely adjacent to an important drainage channel, as, for example, the southwest Wessington Hills (fig. 11), the portion between Lake Andes and Choteau Creek, and the portion between Vermilion River and Canton, and again from Sioux Falls to Winfred. As has been already intimated, the pre-Glacial topography is believed

to have had great influence upon both the course and the character of the moraine. For example, the locations of Turtle Ridge, Choteau Creek Hills, and Turkey Ridge are doubtless due to the positions of high pre-Glacial buttes. The position of Vermilion Ridge seems rather determined by the distance which the ice sheet could force itself up an inclined plane. The subordinate lobes, as in the case of the Dakota lobe itself, were primarily determined by the existence of valleys down or up which the ice pushed its way.

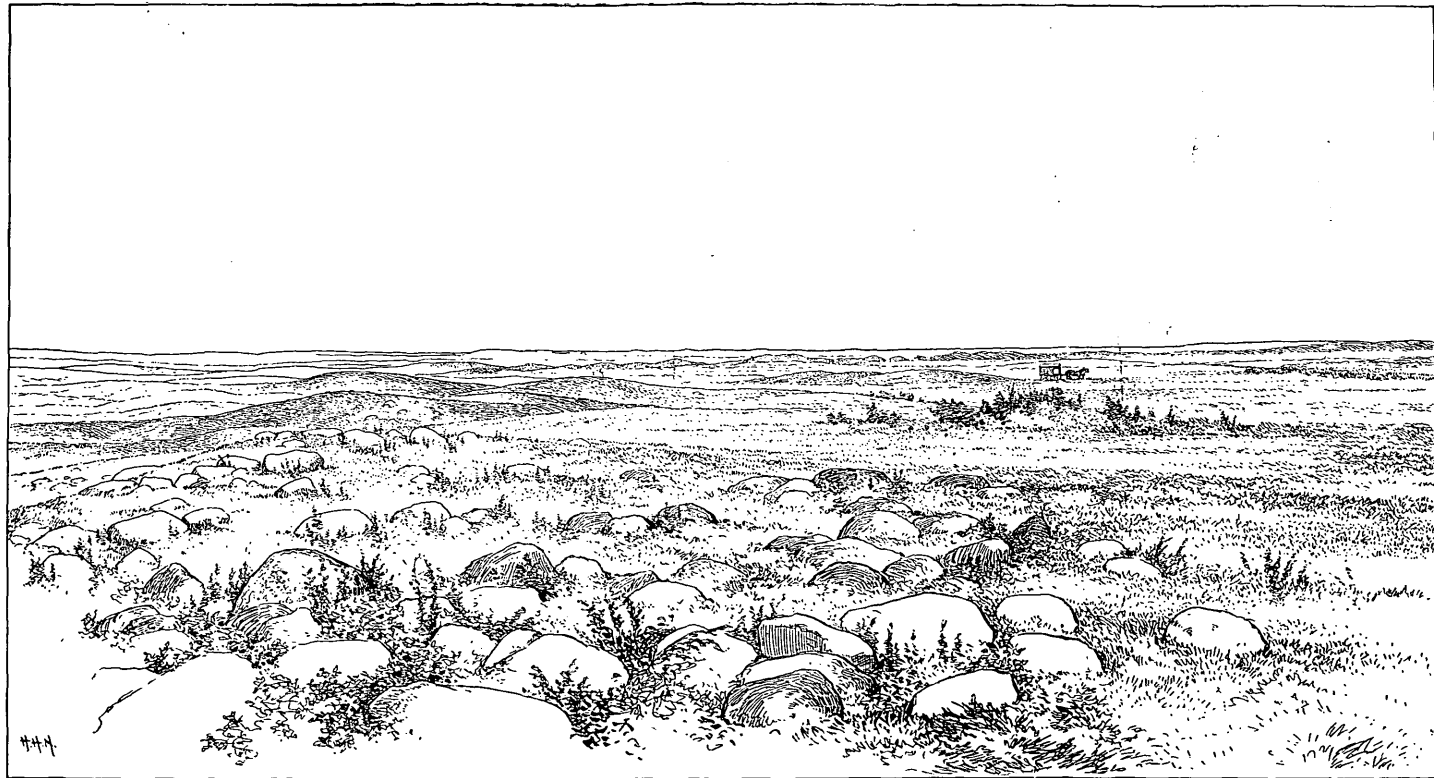
HEIGHT.

The moraine has an elevation, above the plain inside, of from 50 to 400 feet. Its average height is about 100 feet. The extreme elevations, as, for example, in Turtle Ridge, are in localities nearer the center of the ice sheet, where we may suppose its thickness was greater and its transporting action more pronounced. The lowest portions are found apparently either where the ice sheet extended into ponded waters or where it was acted upon by floods of water coincident with or subsequent to its formation. An example of the first case is found north and south of the Bijou Hills. An example of the second is found in the lower portions of the James and Vermilion valleys. It seems not improbable that some of the less developed portions of the moraine are to be accounted for by their distance from the source of material and their transient occupation by the ice sheet. For example, the ice can hardly be conceived as occupying the moraine in the vicinity of Kimball as long as it did in the vicinity of Wessington Springs or of Lake Andes. It seems not improbable, also, that, other things being equal, if the drainage of an ice lobe is lateral an excess of material would be found near the termination of a glacier rather than in its lateral portions. This may explain the height of the moraine in the vicinity of Lake Andes.

The outer or principal moraine, in general, appears to increase in height toward the north, and still more toward the west. Both of these features will be seen from the following table:

Table showing heights of outer moraine.

Locality.	Elevation above—			Highest rocks near by.
	River outside.	Plain inside.	Sea.	
West of Russell.....	330	200	1, 825	
Northeast of Montrose.....		200	1, 740	
West of Hartford.....	289	200	1, 692	
South of Wall Lake.....	247	175	1, 650	
South of Sioux Falls.....	130	125	1, 519-1, 525	
Southeast of Sioux Falls.....	265	155	1, 555	120
Southwest corner T. 99, R. 48.....	200	110	1, 525	



CONTINUATION OF OSARS NORTHEAST OF MONTROSE.

Table showing heights of outer moraine—Continued.

Locality.	Elevation above—			Highest rocks near by.
	River outside.	Plain inside.	Sea.	
South of Canton.....	310	130	1,550	
Beresford	349	225	1,505	
Sec. 31, T. 94, R. 53.....	100	75	1,325	
Spirit Mound	215	90	1,361	18
Sec. 31, T. 94, R. 53.....	275	150	1,421	
Sec. 5, T. 97, R. 55.....	.....	.....	1,740	
Sec. 28, T. 95, R. 54.....	260	150	1,450	100
Sec. 7, T. 94, R. 55.....	250	100	1,440	
Mount Pisgah, (sec. 34, T. 95, R. 56)....	290	135	1,475	
Northwest of Lesterville.....	.....	65	a 1,400	
Lakeport.....	310	.....	a 1,500	120
Sec. 3, T. 92, R. 61.....	400	160	1,615	
Sec. 4, T. 95, R. 61.....	160	120	1,745	
North end of Choteau Creek Hills.....	.....	260	1,800	150(?)
East center T. 95, R. 62.....	100	250	1,805	
Prospect Point (sec. 8, T. 97, R. 61).....	.....	.....	1,645	
Northeast corner T. 94, R. 63.....	400	200	1,620	
South center T. 94, R. 62.....	610	.....	1,850	200
South of Lake Andes.....	605	390	1,845	
Sec. 6, T. 96, R. 66.....	450	260	.....	55
Sec. 24, T. 97, R. 68.....	575	54	1,865	50
Sec. 28, T. 98, R. 68.....	697	175	1,986	
Southwest end of East Bijou.....	800	300	2,090	
East end of East Bijou.....	.....	275	1,975	
North of end of East Bijou 2 miles....	.....	75	a 1,775	
Hills near Kimball.....	.....	50	1,820	
Southwest Wessingtons near Ishams Lake.....	.....	300	.....
Turtle Point.....	.....	475	1,954	100
Sec. 27, T. 108, R. 66.....	.....	200	1,785	
Sec. 3, T. 107, R. 69.....	215	110	1,765	

a Estimated.

STONINESS OF THE MORAINE AND DISTRIBUTION OF BOWLERS.

The stoniness of the moraine seems to bear a direct relation to the action of water upon it. Where there are traces of torrential wash in the configuration of the country there is usually an increase in the number of bowlders; for example, in the internal drainage of Turtle Ridge bowlders abound upon the abrupt sides of the channels. And yet this was evidently only one influence among several. The occur-

rence of bowlders in patches or nests, upon the moraine as well as upon the till, is probably due to some obscure segregating action of the glacier or of glacial streams.

The number of bowlders in general in the Dakota moraine is much less than in moraines farther east, as, for instance, in Wisconsin. This is to be explained largely by the absence of boulder-forming rocks in the region. The glaciers over the whole Dakota lobe, with the exception of a few isolated square miles of Archean rocks, rested upon clay which was evidently easily eroded both by water and by ice. As has been already stated, the harder strata at the advent of the ice were, as a rule, found capping a few buttes. These buttes, in most cases, seem to have withstood the ice, and so their capping was not transported to any great distance.

Bowlders of crystalline rocks, granite, greenstone, quartzites of several sorts, and of a very fine-grained, compact white limestone from the upper Silurian beds, occur everywhere, with little variation in their relative prominence. Some of the variations noticed in the character and distribution of bowlders are as follows: Flesh-colored, fine-grained granite, black slate, and white and dark quartzites abound more along the western side of the Dakota lobe. The white and the yellow Silurian limestones were noticed in unusual size and profusion in Lake Andes Outlet and about the mouth of Choteau Creek, especially to the west of that stream. Bowlders from 8 to 10 feet long and from 2 to 3 feet thick are not uncommon, while smaller ones are much more frequent. Their abundance so impressed me that in several clusters and heaps I counted them. In one, 16 out of 22 were limestone; in another, 8 out of 16; in another, 40 out of 48. Several others showed more than half limestone. The clusters counted were all on the lower bowldery terrace.

There are several kinds of rocks found in southeastern South Dakota which are adapted to form erratics. One is a siliceous rock of Tertiary origin resembling buhrstone, of fine texture, yellowish color, and usually marked with the stems of plants. This has been noticed apparently near position a little south of the Northern Pacific Railway, and occasional bowlders, not often more than 6 inches in diameter, are distributed to all portions outside of the moraine, specimens being found, though never in considerable numbers, as far south and east as Page County, Iowa. A second rock is the greenish quartzite capping the buttes of the Bijou Hills system. This stone seems not to retain its hardness when exposed to the action of alkaline waters, for bowlders of this rock are rarely found far from their original position without showing much disintegration. The next two, from the Cretaceous, furnish bowlders, but they last for only a short time and are found rarely at much distance from their original beds. They are the "chalkstone" and the Dakota sandstone. Under the influence of moisture and shearing stress one quickly changes to clay and the other to sand. Fossils from

the one and pebbles from the other are not infrequently found. The largest bowlders from the Cretaceous, though rarely over a foot in diameter, are fragments of large bluish limestone concretions from the Benton, and usually show a septarian structure; they are not common, but seem quite durable. Interesting erratics, but rarely more than 4 inches in width, are derived from the Pierre and Benton. They are fragments of clay-ironstone concretions, which on weathering become hollow pebbles of limonite. The last is by far the most important. It is the well-known quartzite which exists in extensive ledges through southern Minnesota and westward as far as the vicinity of Mitchell. Its structure is favorable to the formation of bowlders, being naturally divided into blocks by numerous joints and seams of stratification. Furthermore, its indestructibility preserves the bowlders when passing through the ordeal of glacial and glacioclastic action. Red quartzite bowlders are rarely over 5 feet in length. The most western point where this rock was exposed to the abrasion of the ice is at Rockport. Another point farther west is found on Enemy Creek, in sec. 20, T. 102, R. 59, but from its lower position seems never to have been eroded by the action of the ice. The most western point in the moraine and the deposits outside at which red quartzite bowlders have been found is in a line nearly due south of Rockport, on How Creek, in northern Nebraska. It is not unlikely that an extended search in the Choteau Creek Hills may discover them there, but as yet none have been observed. From this point they increase rapidly in numbers toward the east. This distribution corresponds with the direction of the glacial scratches at Rockport and vicinity, which is southeast.

Another interesting point in the distribution of the red quartzite bowlders is that they are very abundant—70 to 90 per cent of all erratics—in the north end of Turtle Ridge, southwest of Turtle Ridge Creek and east of Clay Creek, but outside (north and west) of those streams they are rare. This is so noticeable, that it has attracted the attention of the residents of the region. This corresponds with the distinction between the first and second moraines.

CHAPTER III.

THE DRIFT REGION OUTSIDE OF THE OUTER MORAINE.

The drift, by which we mean any deposit, whether bowlder-clay, sand, or gravel, containing erratics which show marks of ice action, extends for greatly varying distances outside of the moraine. As already stated, the erratics are mainly from the Archean and Silurian rocks. The region under consideration is naturally separated into the following divisions, which may be designated according to the portions of the moraine corresponding to their inner boundary.

What we shall, for convenience, style the Red Lake region, includes all territory lying outside of the moraine from Turtle Point and the moraine west to the vicinity of Pratt Creek, embracing—

The Ponca reach, extending from the mouth of Pratt Creek to the mouth of the Niobrara.

The loess region, extending on its northwestern border from the mouth of the Niobrara to Sioux Falls.

The Coteau des Prairies region, extending from Sioux Falls to Vermilion Point and beyond.

In each case the outer limit, as before stated, is the limit of the drift. Each region presents characters peculiar to itself. The first occupies an extensive external angle of the moraine and presents the peculiarity of driftless areas rising as islands above the sheet of investing drift. The second is long and quite narrow, being confined almost wholly to the present gorge of the Missouri. The third is covered with a continuous sheet of drift, and that again with a blanket of loam or loess. The fourth, like the first, occupies an extensive angle of the Missouri, but presents no driftless islands and is only partially covered with the loess.

RED LAKE REGION.

Topographically this region consists of a broad, basin-like widening of the more elevated or superficial portion of the valley of the Missouri, from the vicinity of the Great Bend to the vicinity of the Bijou Hills. It may be compared to a great lake bed in which wide, shallow channels have been eroded, and then at a later stage some of the principal ones have been narrowed and cut down to thrice their original depth.

The region is bounded on the north and east by the moraine. On the west its boundary may be given provisionally as follows: From the Missouri above the Great Bend along the west side of Medicine Creek

to the vicinity of Medicine Butte; thence past Red Butte south across White River; thence curving southeast to Waterholes Creek, 5 or 6 miles above its mouth; thence along the eastern side of its abrupt valley to the Missouri, which it closely follows down to the mouth of Snake Creek. This boundary is mainly determined by the distribution of bowlders, which are sparsely scattered over the older deposits of the country. The underlying rocks of the region are Pierre clays, which were evidently much eroded before the deposition of the drift. The Tertiary also is represented by quartzite, gravels, and probably some clays, capping the buttes along the southern and western border.

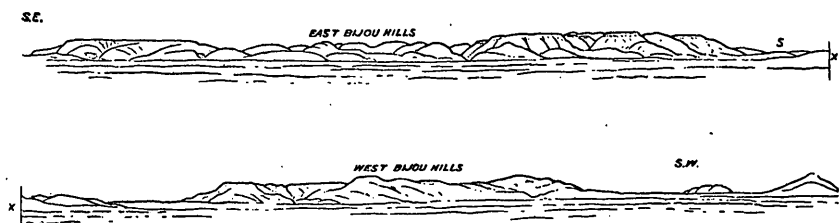


FIG. 12.—Bijou Hills, from the north.

The bottom of the pre-Glacial basin, as indicated by the course of the streams as well as by direct observation, was in the vicinity of Chamberlain. Around the edge of the basin to the west and south are isolated buttes capped with a greenish Tertiary quartzite. A range of these begins with the Bijou Hills and extends in a nearly continuous range westward. (See figs. 12 and 13.) Similar buttes are found southwest of the Great Bend, one of the more conspicuous being Medicine Butte, about 16 miles west-northwest from Chamberlain.

The drift which covers this region varies in thickness from 20 to 80 feet along the eastern side to merely scattered bowlders, as is usually



FIG. 13.—Buttes south of White River, from the north. v West end of Bijous. vv Gap of Waterholes Creek.

the case, west of the Missouri. These become fewer and smaller to a scarcely determinable edge. On the east side of the Missouri, between it and the moraine, is a nearly continuous sheet of till, which, as elsewhere, is yellowish above and reddish or bluish below. The surface of this till is unlike that which is found inside of the moraine in that it combines the usual features of erosive topography with faint traces of such basins as are found within the moraine. The average height of hills above minor valleys is from 30 to 50 feet. The elevation of the broad swells or uplands above the principal valleys is from 125 to 200 feet. Basins are rarely over 5 feet in depth and an acre in area. Moreover, many of these, by their position, suggest the idea that they are

due to the imperfect filling of old tributary valleys. They were noticed, especially along the northwest side of the Red Lake Valley, about 50 feet above its bottom. The accumulation of an indistinct terrace below that level may be conceived to have filled the side valleys at the mouth more than farther back. The surface is rarely too rough for tillage, except in the banks of present streams. The higher portions are covered, west and north of Red Lake, with 6 to 10 feet of yellow silt or loess. This hides bowlders, which are seldom seen except below 50 feet above the bottom of Red Lake Valley. In places there are traces of a terrace at about that height, as has been already stated, but bowlders are not confined to it, and are probably more noticeable below that level, because the loess has there been frequently removed. Everywhere there is a rich, black, loamy soil, except in basins and low flats, where "alkali" clay abounds.

To the general statement that the region between the Missouri and the moraine is covered with till, the following notable exceptions must be made: First, the region bounded on the north by a shallow valley running along the north line of Buffalo County from the Missouri to Boxelder Creek, thence along that stream on the east to its junction with Crow Creek, and thence by an undetermined line to a bend in the Missouri about 5 miles above Chamberlain. Over this region the drift is absent, except in the form of bowldery terraces along the principal streams, and elsewhere sparsely scattered bowlders, perhaps one to the square mile. The surface of this region presents gentle declivities, except close to larger streams, where the underlying clay has been excavated into yawning ravines. The deep unbroken valleys lie about 100 feet below the broad rounded swells which separate them. The soil on the upland is a fertile, black, loamy clay. The sides of ravines are barren. The highest portions above Crow Creek are about 1,770 feet above the sea, or 450 feet above the Missouri. The highest summit south of Crow Creek and one a few miles northwest of Chamberlain may be a few feet higher, but neither rises to the height of the till near Bijou Gap.

Another and more perfect exception is found in the western Bijou Hills, including the western end of the East Bijou, the West Bijou, the buttes which stand in the gorge of the Missouri, and the summit of a smaller hill northwest of Bijou Gap. Upon all these no drift, not even scattered bowlders or pebbles of drift origin, is found above the altitude of 1,885 feet, or 565 feet above the Missouri at Chamberlain.

The distribution of drift in the East Bijou is peculiar, and as it affords a contrast to the cases in hand, we will consider it more fully. The hill is a long, narrow butte, nearly 6 miles long and over a mile wide near its western end, and 300 feet in height. The eastern end is wrapped in a heavy covering of bowldery drift, as is all, except a sickle-shaped spur about a mile in length and nearly equal in height to the rest of the hill, which extends northwest from the body of the hill and

curves around toward the southwest. This spur, with a sharp southwest angle of the hill, incloses an amphitheater which opens to the southwest. The southwest angle of the hill is covered with bowlder clay upon its southern and western slopes to the depth of about 30 feet. The top of the northwest spur is wholly without drift, except on its outer slope. In the amphitheater bowlder clay rises to the 1,885-foot level in foothills which show a gentler slope than the hill itself. A conical hill lying a little detached from the north side of the hill is also driftless. The edge of the till on the flat summit of the hill ends in a slope to the northwest, its trend being northeast-southwest.

West of the Missouri only scattered boulders are found remote from the immediate vicinity of the gorges of the Missouri and White rivers, except a gravel-topped plateau several miles in extent southwest of the mouth of White River and south of American Crow Creek, 3 or 4 miles from the Missouri. Masses of drift, both gravel and boulders, are also found capping extensive terraces along both the Missouri and the White rivers from 200 to 250 feet above the present level. These will be more fully described in the chapter on terraces.

Along the south side of the old valley of White River, which is 2 miles in width, and in which the present gorge is excavated to the depth of 200 feet, extends a very conspicuous elevated plain covered with gravel, estimated to be 2 or 3 miles wide and extending along White River at least 5 miles. It is much eroded by ravines. Its pebbles are mostly of western origin, as is indicated by the great number of glassy, white, dark, and black quartz, and fragments of chalcedony seams. Granites and white limestone and other northern boulders are prominent on the sides of the ravines and scattered less frequently on the level surface. This plain lies about 350 feet above White River. Along the southern side of this plain lies a low swell, about 20 feet in height, on which there is a great profusion of boulders of all sorts; 28 granite boulders from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 feet in diameter were counted in going up the ridge, one being 6 by 4 feet. A little south, and about 25 feet higher, blocks of Bijou quartzite are abundant, and Cretaceous clay occupies the eroded but gradually rising surface for 4 or 5 miles farther south. At that point a cluster of flat-topped hills rises about 75 feet above the surrounding plain and about 550 above the Missouri. They are considerably eroded, as though they were only the remnant of a much more extensive gravelly plain. Their preservation may be partly due to the greater thickness of deposit at that point, but are more probably due to the fact that they lie on the summit of the watershed between White River and Waterholes Creek. Their hills are capped with a deposit of western gravel 5 to 10 feet in thickness, resting on a drab-colored loam. Upon these hills were found a few boulders, one a dark hornblende gneiss 3 feet in diameter, another of gray granite, smaller. Upon the crest of the watershed southeast of these hills several other boulders were found, but none to the south

or southeast, except two on the summit of a similar butte 3 or 4 miles southeast of the last-mentioned hills, which rise to the same level. Upon this were found a large boulder of white limestone, about 5 feet long, and a smaller one of gray granite. Similar buttes farther south, rising from the valley of the Waterholes, showed abundant blocks of Tertiary quartzite, but few pebbles, and no traces of northern drift.

Excepting the cases already mentioned, no northern boulders were found over the region south of White River. Immediately east of these hills is the wild gorge of Waterholes, and west the shallower valley of a tributary of White River. If traces of drift were formerly more abundant, as is possible, the great erosion connected with these valleys has removed them. The deposit along American Crow Creek is mostly on the south side, 24 miles from the Missouri. It closely resembles the extensive gravelly plain south of the White River, before described. It lies at an altitude of about 350 feet above the Missouri. It is about a mile in width and dips slightly to the north and east. The region between the lower portion of Medicine Creek and the Missouri has not been closely examined, but from its general appearance from the top of Medicine Butte, and its elevation, it is unhesitatingly put down as belonging to the scattered boulder region. In the valley of Medicine Creek, west of Medicine Butte, no trace of drift was found, but on the summit of the watershed, about 2 miles south of the peak, drift was noticed. A ride of a dozen miles to the southeast disclosed none except in the close vicinity of American Crow Creek. The general level of the gently undulating plain occupying the whole region is from 450 to 500 feet above the Missouri.

ANCIENT CHANNELS.

As before stated, the region is traversed by broad valleys. These are found for the most part to coincide with present streams. Their elevation above the Missouri is from 200 to 300 feet. One valley extends from American Creek at Pukwana southwestward past Red Lake in a direct line to the Missouri River. This channel is from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 miles wide, and is occupied in its deepest portion by Red Lake, a shallow body of water 4 miles long and 2 miles wide. It is named from the abundance of reddish weeds which appear along its shores and cover considerable of its surface in the latter part of summer. Just east of Pukwana, and extending for 5 or 6 miles up American Creek, is an ancient lake, which has been filled. The level surface, the eroded spurs, and the sand and gravel struck within a few feet of the surface leave no doubt concerning the fact.

The heads of these various valleys connect in several cases with gaps in the moraine. Crow Creek, 5 or 6 miles southwest of Waterbury, crosses the moraine, which is there attenuated and broken. The northern and larger branch of Smith Creek in a similar way crosses, just northwest of Crow Lake, the faintly developed loop of the moraine, which

is pushed south down the west side of Turtle Ridge. The east branch connects with the internal drainage system of Turtle Ridge and the gap before described southeast of Crow Lake. Two of its southern tributaries rise near the moraine, one at the gap near White Lake and the other at a gap 5 miles northeast of Kimball. American Creek heads on the moraine near Kimball, and receives tributaries from the outer slope of the moraine farther west. Snake Creek heads near a gap or attenuated portion of the moraine south of the Bijou Hills. Another water course from the same stream extends north through Bijou Gap toward the lower part of the moraine, north of the East Bijou.

BOWLDER RIDGES.

A remarkable feature of these valleys in their upper course is the presence of numerous sharp bowldery ridges extending parallel with their course. These resemble those already described in connection with the gap near Crow Lake, and probably are of the same origin. They are from 5 to 15 or 20 feet in height, and frequently show a clustered arrangement. One system was noticed extending along the south side of the valley of Smith Creek near Lyonville. Another along the tributary valley from the vicinity of Kimball. Another, less conspicuous, was noticed along the American Creek Valley. In this case a tendency to a transverse arrangement was noticed. It is not unlikely these were formed in a different way.

OLD WATER LINE.

Another and still more remarkable feature, already alluded to, is a trace of water lines. This was first noticed in the vicinity of the West Bijou Hill. As one ascends its northern side the bowlders suddenly disappear at an apparently horizontal line. None are found upon the summit, nor anywhere upon the southern slope above that level. The drift masses on that side lie as low foothills between the higher spurs extending from the hill. Erosion has frequently made the line between the two very distinct. Upon the northern slope a line of more prominent foothills, or an eroded terrace, corresponding to this line, is quite distinctly shown. Around a high conical hill about 3 miles northwest of the gap the drift is found to disappear at about the same level. The border of the driftless region south of Crow Creek has not been examined with reference to this point. West of the Missouri the bowldery ridge, already mentioned as lying south of White River, is presumably near the same level; the distance between the two localities renders an exact determination with the barometer impossible. Other features of the upland of this region are provisionally referred to the action of currents of water. In the channel passing through Bijou Gap, a little south of the gap, is a marsh covering several acres. Southeast of the gap separating the West Bijou from the Brick Kiln Buttes are three or four slight basins trending southeast. Trailing southeast from each

of the Brick Kiln Buttes, though now detached from them by circumdenudation, is a long southeast ridge. One of these, where studied, showed itself to be capped with loess-like silt, although its core is largely Cretaceous clay. Southeast of Medicine Butte is a shallow marshy basin covering perhaps 2 square miles. Its longer axis points toward a sag in the low swell running east from the butte. South of this lake 3 or 4 miles are two much smaller marshy basins in a broad sag running southeast to the valley of American Crow Creek.

ELEVATIONS.

The elevation of the prominent points of the region, as given in the subjoined table, will furnish a more accurate idea of its topography:

Elevations in the Red Lake region.

[All are barometric except those marked r, which are derived from railroad levels.]

Locality.	Above the Missouri.	Above the sea.
	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Missouri, foot of Great Bend		1, 334
Summit of drift terrace in the Bend	235	1, 590
Bluffs east of river	340	1, 695
Summit between Missouri and Boxelder, 10 miles east	425	1, 780
Boxelder Creek east-northeast	255	1, 610
Gravelly terrace just west	372	1, 725
Summit of moraine northeast	435	1, 790
Missouri at Fort Thompson		1, 341
Drift terrace east	320	1, 660
Summits 11 and 16 miles east	420	1, 760
Valley of Elm Creek between	285	1, 625
Boxelder Creek	210	1, 550
Terrace just east	335	1, 676
Moraine 4 miles east of Boxelder	425	1, 765
Medicine Butte	875	2, 100
Lake southeast	400	1, 725
Plain east, average level	430	1, 750
Bluffs west of Chamberlain	325	1, 645
River at Chamberlain		r 1, 321
Bluffs east of Chamberlain	325	1, 645
Summit 5 or 6 miles northeast of Chamberlain	460	1, 780
Gravelly terrace between Smith and Crow creeks	230	1, 550
Summit 5 miles northeast of Pukwana	380	1, 700
Pukwana	216	1, 537
Ancient lake northeast	210	1, 530

Elevations in the Red Lake region—Continued.

Locality.	Above the Missouri.	Above the sea.
	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Red Lake	204	r 1,525
Kimball	458	r 1,779
Moraine near Kimball	500	1,820
Moraine southeast of Red Lake	325	1,645
Gravel-topped buttes 5 or 6 miles southwest of mouth of White River	570	1,880
Bowlbery ridge northeast of last	510	1,800
Gravelly plain south of old valley of White River...	360	1,665
Terrace of White River 6 or 8 miles above its mouth, capped with drift and loess	225	1,545- 1,500
Missouri at mouth of White River		1,308
Terrace north of mouth of White River	300	1,610
High hill south of the junction of Red Lake Outlet with the Missouri	460	1,765
Conical hill northwest of Bijou Gap	620	1,930
Moraine north of East Bijou	470	1,775
The driftless region 4 miles west of river	500	1,790
Bluffs near Rosebud Landing	450	1,740
River at the Bijous		1,290
Larger Brick Kiln Butte	710	2,000
Summit of ridge trending southeast	600	1,890
Summit of West Bijou	690	1,980
Bijou Gap	460	1,749
Upper limit of drift around western Bijous	590	1,880
Summit of East Bijou	710	2,000

NOTES FROM WELLS AND OTHER EXPOSURES IN THE RED LAKE
REGION.

Natural exposures displaying the drift are almost entirely wanting. Burrows of badgers and pouched-rats not infrequently display the sub-soil, but no more. Wells, the only artificial excavations available, rarely pierce through the drift, and are generally so curbed as to afford no opportunity for direct examination. The statements of well-diggers and other reliable persons who were present when the well was dug, with illustrative material around the mouth of the well, have been necessarily the main reliance in most of the cases tabulated below. Red Lake is given as a base of reference. Steep banks, mostly grassed over, have supplied a little information, which is in general valuable, but not exact.

Data from wells and other exposures in the Red Lake region.

[These data were collected before 1888. There has been no opportunity to tabulate later data.]

Locality.	Elevation above Red Lake.	Description.
	<i>Feet.</i>	
Bottom of ravine, 4 miles west of Pukwana.	45	20 feet deep; 6 feet in "soapstone."
Three miles west of Pukwana.	105	75 feet yellow till above, the rest blue pebbly clay; 1 foot water.
A few rods southwest of last, in a basin.	100	17 feet; plenty of water.
Pukwana, on terrace of an old lake.	10	12 feet yellow till above, 3 feet water; abundant water.
Three miles northwest of Red Lake, edge of basin.	75	3 feet black soil, 8 feet yellow till, limestone and other pebbles, blue till in the bottom.
Three miles west of Red Lake.	85	60 feet through yellow till and gravel, "no blue clay;" good water.
One mile south of south end of Red Lake.	40	16 feet soil, yellow till and sand, 24 feet blue till; no water.
Another near by.....	40	16 feet yellow till and sand, 20 feet blue till; no water,
A little west of last...	40	14 feet soil, yellow till and sand, blue till touched; plenty of water.
On flat southeast of Red Lake.	15	3 to 4 feet soil, 25 feet yellowish and reddish pebble clay, and sand below.
Five miles south-southwest of Red Lake.	160	A few feet yellow loamy till; pebbles not very numerous.
One-half mile east of last, in a basin.	160	Large pile of reddish-gray pebbly clay thrown out.
Five miles north of West Bijou.	215	5 to 6 feet "old soil," 6 to 7 feet yellowish silt with calcareous concretions.
Eighty rods north of West Bijou, on knoll.	270	6 feet yellow till, little soil (a cellar).
A mile west of south-west angle of East Bijou, on a ridge.	235	40 feet soil, then yellow pebble clay, then sand, then bluish dirt which grew harder, 52 feet soapstone.
At foot of southwest angle of East Bijou.	210	40 feet loose clay.

Data from wells and other exposures in the Red Lake region—Continued.

Locality.	Elevation above Red Lake.	Description.
	<i>Feet.</i>	
Two and one-half miles southwest of southwest angle of East Bijou.	180	Struck blue clay (Cretaceous) at 28 feet.
Sec. 28, 4 miles south of East Bijou, southwest slope of high hill.	280	All bluish clay.
Sec. 28, west center . . .	245	30 feet yellow till, 25 feet soapstone; little water.
Sec. 28, southeast corner, in a ravine.	230	16 feet yellow clay, a little water, 15 feet blue pebble clay, 4 feet "black soil," "soapstone."
South of west end of West Bijou.	225	38 feet yellow pebble clay above, "black clay" below, then 2 feet of "soapstone."
Bluff 1 mile northeast of Chamberlain.	85	60 feet drift.
Bluffs east of Chamberlain.	115	5 to 10 feet loess, 70 to 75 feet drift, a reddish checky clay 50 feet below top.
Bluffs 2 miles south of Chamberlain.	145	5 feet soil and loess, 1½ feet yellow and drab dirty sand, 40 feet pebbly clay, quite gravelly, above drab clay.
Bluffs south of Red Lake Outlet.	240	20 feet drift above, yellow, loamy, bowl-dery clay below, a gravel bed, bowlderets, 50 per cent Bijou quartzite, 25 per cent white limestone, some boulders 2½ feet thick.

EXPLANATORY HYPOTHESES.

Such are the general facts derived from a study of the region, and we naturally look for some hypothesis by which they may be explained. There are but two which present themselves. One is that this region—at least so much of it as is now covered with till—at some time previous to the formation of the moraine was covered by the ice sheet, which was either too thin or occupied the region too short a time to obliterate the pre-Glacial topography. The other hypothesis is that the dispersion of drift was accomplished by floating ice in an expansion of the Missouri, covering the region contemporaneously with the occupation of the moraine.

In favor of the first theory it may be urged that till is believed by many to be an ancient ground moraine; also that the occurrence of basins and bowldery ridges resembling those of glaciated areas can not be otherwise explained. Furthermore, topographical conditions seem somewhat favorable for the extension of a lobe westward between White Lake and the Bijou Hills, and such corresponds well with the observed distribution of till.

Against this hypothesis the following considerations may be urged:

First. If we make the extension of the ice correspond to the present distribution of till we must suppose such an extension both north and south of the Bijou Hills by an ice sheet, which, at least around the West Bijou, could not have been more than 100 feet in thickness, and extending on that level at least 3 miles around the East Bijou, while in less than 40 rods it must have risen from 100 feet to considerably over 300 feet in thickness. Or, if we postulate first a thin ice sheet of greater extent, and later a much thicker one of less extent, we find no adequate room for the drainage during the occupancy by the second ice sheet.

Second. Such an extension must have passed more than 15 miles beyond the moraine about Red Lake, while in the northern portion of the region it extended in some places less than 2 miles. Such difference in fluctuation at nearly or quite equal altitudes is incomprehensible.

Third. This hypothesis fails to offer a rational explanation for the scattered bowlders which cover by far the greater portion of the region under consideration.

Accepting therefore provisionally the other hypothesis, we may explain the facts discovered as follows: During the first advance of the ice sheet streams to the north and west of this region, finding their courses checked to the east, may have escaped around the edge of the ice; at first around north of the Wessington Hills; later down east of the Ree Hills southeast to White Lake; still later from the Great Bend to the White River and north of the Bijou Hills. Or, if we assume that the Missouri in this region dates back to pre-Glacial times, we may forego these suppositions. But finally the ice reached the Bijou Hills and soon after its greatest extent to the mouth of Pratt Creek. At this stage the water over the Red Lake region rose to its highest level, deposited the scattered blocks everywhere, and began the accumulation of till along the southeast side of the basin. The influx from the White River formed the highest gravel terrace, which was probably rendered the more easy by the derivation of material from the conglomerate strata of the buttes near by. The till filled to the water level in the vicinity of Bijou Hills. The accumulation of the till in this portion, rather than elsewhere, may be accounted for by the occurrence of gaps through the moraine—at that time, of course, larger than later—north of Kimball and north of the Bijous. The ice lobe of the Ree Valley may not have attained its maximum extension at this stage because of the greater elevation of its bed.

The outlet of this basin through the Bijous and around the ice at Pratt Creek probably soon cut down to the 350-foot level by the deepening of the channel west of the Bijous. The till continued to form in the southeast portion. The lower gravelly terrace south of White River was formed, as also the accumulation south of American Crow Creek. The Ree lobe with its branches had meanwhile reached its position, and the high bowldery terraces along the Missouri at the Great Bend and along Boxelder Creek were forming, and the upper portions of other important streams of the region were outlined. The formation of some of the osar-like ridges in these valleys are possibly to be referred to this stage.

During the thinning of the ice sheet these streams became unusually laden with silt, while ice blocks became rare, because of the stagnation of the ice, and a thin mantle of silt overspread the region below this level. As the melting of the ice sheet continued in its recession to the position of the second moraine, the channels were gradually deepened to about the 200-foot level. Most of the osar-like ridges were formed, and faint bowldery terraces of the Red Lake channel, which may be referred to a reassortment of local material rather than to that directly derived from the ice sheet.

More space has been given to this region because of its unusually clear bearing on the questions connected with glacial and glacio-natant action, which will be further considered in connection with the loess region, where the phenomena are more complicated.

PONCA REACH, OR REGION FROM MOUTH OF PRATT CREEK TO MOUTH OF NIOBRARA.

This region presents striking contrast with the last. It is narrow and straight. Its outer margin at no point is more than 3 or 4 miles from the river, nor more than 15 miles from the inside of the moraine. Its southwestern limit ends very abruptly along the edge of a high table-land corresponding geologically with the Bijou Hills, and rising abruptly 450 to 600 feet above the Missouri. The Missouri, from Pratt Creek to Fort Randall, lies in a narrow gorge, from 2 to 3 miles wide most of the way, with a high bowldery terrace along its left bank, at an elevation of 175 to 250 feet. Lower alluvial terraces are scantily developed. On the right bank the frowning edge of the table-land before mentioned rises abruptly from the river, except in the bend above the mouth of Whetstone Creek, where the bowldery terrace is finely developed, and at Fort Randall, where a high alluvial terrace is found.

Viewing the bluffs south of Pratt Creek Gap from about 12 or 15 miles north, they appear rising above the glaciated plain to about the same height as the Cedar Creek Hills to the left, which are, as before stated, a portion of the moraine; and they are at a lower altitude than the ancient water level in the vicinity of the Bijou Hills. From both

considerations it would seem impossible, under the lacustrine hypothesis, that they should not at some time have been more or less covered with drift; nevertheless, no drift is now found upon them, and not even in the valley of Whetstone Creek did a considerable search reveal any bowlders or northern gravel. This is the more remarkable because the surface of the country drains southward into Whetstone Creek from the crest of the bluffs overlooking the Missouri River on the north.

The southwest side of the river was examined again near Fort Randall, and nothing was found higher than about 425 feet above the river which could in any wise be considered of northern origin except a very few scattered pebbles. The examination was continued for 15 miles, to the summit of the divide between the Missouri River and Ponca Creek, 600 feet above the former. Much of the surface traversed was about 450 feet above the river, and was crossed with shallow valleys extending from the northwest to the southeast. The surface was a dark loam, but the subsoil everywhere showed either the clays of the Cretaceous or, upon the high hills, the sands, marls, and gravel of the Tertiary.

From the vicinity of Fort Randall to the mouth of Choteau Creek the moraine is more remote from the river. Its outer slope, which shows the usual billowy appearance of hills, is ravined by two or three considerable brooks, which rise near the crest of the moraine and run nearly directly south to the river. Their upper tributaries occupy a more or less defined valley just outside of the moraine and parallel with it. This slope extends down to the high terrace before mentioned, which is here from 1 to 4 miles wide. This terrace shows a very even surface, sloping from a height of 250 feet at its outer side to about 200 feet along its inner edge. An interesting feature appears about 5 miles northeast of Yankton Agency, where the northern edge of the terrace is marked by an abrupt bank, facing southwest and extending for a mile or two. It is over 75 feet in height. Where the terrace was observed in the vicinity of Greenwood, near a stream, it was 130 feet above the river. There it is capped with 10 to 15 feet of silt, below which it is very gravelly and contains bowlders for a dozen feet or so. Lower down it presents the usual features of till. About 4 miles west of Choteau Creek its edge is 200 feet above the river. Its surface is free from bowlders and pebbles, being generally covered with a deep layer of silt. Below this a layer of 30 to 40 feet of loose yellow and reddish till prevails. Farther east, where its surface is ravined and cut into knobs, a wonderful profusion of limestone bowlders is found.

Upon the south side of the river the table-land before mentioned retains its altitude and terminates on the northeast sharply with the top of the river bluffs. It continues with scarcely diminished height to the mouth of the Niobrara, where it terminates abruptly.

Along this portion of the river a very narrow terrace hanging to the abrupt south bank, as seen from a distance, was judged to correspond to that on the north side. From the mouth of Choteau Creek to the

mouth of the Niobrara the ice sheet seems to have abutted closely upon the river, much as at the mouth of Pratt Creek, but without pushing its moraine entirely into it, as it did a little farther east, in Emanuel Creek Gap.

Across the river is the eastern end of the southwestern table-land, rising abruptly from the junction of the Niobrara with the Missouri to the height of a little more than 300 feet. At this point it is a narrow, much-eroded ridge, but within 2 miles it attains an elevation of 400 feet and becomes a table-land more than 2 miles in breadth, which continues toward the west, both rising and broadening. Its slope is pronouncedly northward toward Ponca Creek. It is traversed by deep, narrow valleys running in that direction from the very edge of the bluffs overlooking the Niobrara. These bluffs are sometimes even lower at the head of the valleys, as though the escarpment on the south had moved northward since the valleys were formed. About 6 miles west of the mouth of the Niobrara heavy deposits of western gravel were found in knolls along the crest of the bluffs, about 425 feet above the level of the river at Niobrara. These are so left by erosion as to stand out conspicuously above the surrounding surface. A trip was taken along the line of the trail to a conical butte rising about 60 feet above the general slope around it and about 500 feet above the river. Upon it, and at several other points, numerous large blocks of Bijou quartzite are found, but not the first trace of either boulders or pebbles of northern origin are seen upon the general level of the highland. Both, however, are found scattered in considerable numbers over the spur at the eastern end to the height of 350 feet. It is a noticeable fact that they occur at the higher levels only in the sags upon the crest, where erosion would be least likely to remove them. They are very rarely found on the slopes of the bluffs or upon the flat at their foot. The limit of the drift at this point is estimated to be not more than 4 miles from the inner border of the moraine where it is developed on the opposite side of the river. The ice sheet must have been much nearer at its maximum, and when we remember that all the drainage of the vast western edge of the ice sheet must have passed this point, we are forced to inquire why the stream did not erode its way farther south; why it did not rise in its flooded stage so as to carry the boulders (for there must have been some river ice, bearing drift, in glacial ice blocks) to a much higher level, to at least 450 feet, the level of blocks less than 4 miles southeast. It is clear that either this table-land was above the level at that time, so that they could not be deposited, or, if deposited at a lower level, erosion has been sufficient to wholly remove them.

The before-mentioned gravel beds along the Niobrara evidently correspond in elevation to the extensive sheet of gravel south of the town of Niobrara. From a distant view it is judged that these beds were connected through gravelly (?) knolls in the sharp bend of the Niobrara a few miles above its mouth.

LOESS REGION.

BOUNDARIES AND SURFACE.

Although the word loess may suggest the whole area covered by that deposit, the boundaries of that region are so vague that we adhere to our original plan of limiting our description chiefly to the surface covered with drift. We therefore turn our attention first to the—

WESTERN BOUNDARY OF GLACIAL DRIFT.

This also has been less accurately determined in this region than in the preceding. The principal difficulties met in an attempt to determine it are as follows:

1. The deep and almost universal covering of loess, which extends much farther westward.

2. The gradual passage of the northern or glacial drift into a western or fluvial drift, which has been found to occur along the principal streams from the west. The distinctions which have been relied upon in the determination of the former have been the occurrence of erratics of red quartzite and white and yellow Silurian limestones; also the striation and abrasion of pebbles peculiar to glacial drift. On the other hand, the western drift presents lithological characters similar to those which have been previously recognized in the discussion of the Red Lake region, and the pebbles are only waterworn.

3. The covering of the northern drift by the western. This may lead to wrong conclusions where exposures are incomplete.

4. The erosion and removal of the drift itself underneath the loess. This renders the upper surface of the drift very uneven, and because no drift is found upon the surface of a hillside one may fancy that none is present, where an exposure may reveal it as not only present, but rising high in the center of the hill.

So far as yet determined the western limit may be stated as follows: From the junction of the Verdigris with the Niobrara southeast, passing a mile or so east of Creighton, 5 or 6 miles east of Plainview, and east of Pierce to the vicinity of Norfolk; thence south along the western line of Stanton County, swinging to the east in Colfax County to the vicinity of Richland; thence in the same direction, passing 3 or 4 miles east of David City, south along the east side of Plum Creek to the vicinity of Seward; thence south and southwest, passing west of Norval post-office to the vicinity of Friend; thence southwest indefinitely. That one may estimate as justly as possible the value of this determination the subjoined data are given.

1. Localities visited which are beyond the drift, with a few others reliably reported:

- (a) No drift is found anywhere west of the Verdigris¹ nor between

¹ Later investigation has developed the occurrence of a few syenitic boulders upon the high terrace near Verdigris Valley, 180 feet above the stream.

the Verdigris and Bazile south of Sparta post-office. The Tertiary and Cretaceous rocks appear in that region in several places below the loess without the drift intervening. (b) On the south side of the valley, at Plainview, a bed of western gravel several feet in thickness was observed, but not the slightest trace of northern erratics. None have been found after a persistent search upon uplands for several miles west and north of that town. (c) The Yellowbank, north of Battle Creek, exposes a straight section 120 feet high, in which 60 feet of fine sand rests on the horizontal surface of 60 feet of compact drab-colored clay; no fossils or pebbles in either. On a side hill, a little northeast, considerable western gravel was found, but no northern erratics. (d) From Norfolk to Columbus no drift was noticed in passing on the cars and none learned of by inquiry. (e) On a high steep hill facing Shell Creek, near Platte Center, numerous pebbles and a few bowlderets were found resting on Tertiary clays. None were of distinct northern origin; none were striated, and most have a decidedly western character. (f) In numerous deep cuts north of David City and in the south side of the Platte Valley no pebbles of any sort were found. (g) Four miles south of David City a recently bored 80-foot well showed only a few western waterworn pebbles in a yellow clay. (h) The unanimous testimony of well diggers is that west of Plum Creek, which runs south from near Brainard to Seward, no "hard heads" or pebbly clay are struck in wells, though they are uniformly much deeper than those east of that line. In both regions the deposits are similar down to what is commonly called the "old soil." Below that point those west of the line indicated show sand only, while those east exhibit bowldery clay. (i) Nothing but western gravel was found in the vicinity of York, and general testimony is to the effect that no "hard heads" or pebbly clay are found west of Seward.

2. On the other hand, in the following localities the glacial drift has been directly observed. A few others of which reliable information was obtained are added, but carefully distinguished.

An extensive sheet of gravel was observed south of Niobrara. A thin deposit begins a mile east of Creighton. There are numerous exposures of yellow till from Osmond east for 5 or 6 miles, and there is abundant pebbly clay with bowlders at the insane asylum $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles northeast of Norfolk. "Hard heads" are reported as abundant 3 or 4 miles east of Pierce. Yellow and blue till with northern bowlders was found on Maple Creek in the northern part of Colfax County. Red quartzite pebbles were found in quantity 5 miles northwest of Schuyler. Northern bowlders and pebbles are abundant on the bluffs south of Linwood, and less prominent about the head of Bone Creek 5 miles east of David City, also south of Brainard in Butler County. Bowlders abound on hillsides and in ravines generally east of Plum Creek and of the Big Blue in Seward County. Drift is shown several feet in thickness in a high bank on the Big Blue 9 miles southwest of Milford. Red quartzite

boulders and other traces of glacial drift were observed in abundance south of Pleasant Hill in Saline County, and are reported in the vicinity of Fairbury, Jefferson County.

EASTERN BOUNDARY OF GLACIAL DRIFT.

Theoretically the eastern boundary of this region should coincide with the extension in that direction of drift material which has been dispersed by ice of the Dakota lobe either as a glacier or as icebergs. On either supposition a mingling of material with that which was dispersed from the Iowa lobe would be unavoidable; consequently there would be more or less drift from the northeast in the area under consideration. So far as is known, no lithological distinction which would be decisive in this case can be drawn. Red quartzite and white limestone erratics are found inside both the Dakota and the Iowa loops of the moraine. The rock most likely to be of service in this respect is that from the Missouri Coteau, which resembles buhrstone,¹ but it occurs in such small fragments, and so rarely, that it must be of little service. The phenomena of most practical value which are likely to be found are striæ upon the underlying rocks, which show motion from a westerly direction. Topographical relations may also have some weight. So far as is known no such striæ are found in this region east of the immediate valley of the Missouri. Farther north, however, striæ are found in such relation to the Dakota loop of the moraine as will warrant us in placing the boundary which we seek far east of the Missouri. In Minnesota striæ from the northwest, or even from more nearly west, are found at Pipestone, also at a point 7 miles south of Pipestone, according to Mr. Warren Upham of the Minnesota survey. Numerous striæ have been observed also north of Valley Springs, South Dakota, from N. 62° W.

This gives us reason for locating, provisionally, the eastern boundary quite remote from the Missouri. It may nearly coincide with the eastern boundary of the loess deposit as given in a later section. A small boulder resembling burhstone was found at Cherokee, on the Little Sioux, and another east of Shenandoah in Page County, Iowa, and it is not improbable that the eastern boundary should nowhere be nearer to the Missouri River than 30 miles.

As before stated, the southern boundary is arbitrarily set at about 100 miles from the moraine. The southern limit of the drift would lead us beyond the scope of this paper.

DESCRIPTION OF SURFACE.

Elevation.—The surface of this region is considerably higher than that within the moraine; south of Emanuel Creek Gap the difference is about 250 feet, and east of Big Sioux Gap 150 feet. Along its western

¹ This has been determined to be of Miocene age and formed apparently in marshes bordering the lakes of that epoch.

side the average altitude of the highest points is nearly 1,700 feet, while along the Missouri it is about 1,400 feet. The whole region slopes toward the south and east. This is shown by the following list of elevations. They are mostly barometric, but closely connected with points determined by railroad levels. Only such points are taken as lie in the general level of the country.

List of elevations in the loess region.

From north to south:	Feet.
Bluffs south of Herrick, Nebraska	1,750
Hills north of Plainview	1,825
Hills near Battle Creek	1,816
Plain south of Humphrey	1,690
Plain at Osceola	1,680
Plain at York	1,662
Plain at Fairmont	1,656
Bluffs at St. Helena, over	1,400
Summit of the divide southwest of Hartington	1,710
Hilltops southwest of Coleridge	1,840
Summit southwest of Northside	1,830
Summit 8 miles south of Stanton	1,800
Bluffs 5 miles northwest of Schuyler	1,610
Plain at David City	1,619
Higher knolls	1,650
Plain at Germantown	1,584
Plain at Dorchester	1,501
Hills west of Ponca	1,375
Hills west of Emerson	1,630
Hills east of West Point	1,526
South of North Bend	1,450
Hilltops near Wahoo, over	1,300
Plain at Cheney	1,435
Knolls at Cheney	1,460
Southeast of Valley Springs	1,510
Plain at Warren, Iowa	1,465
Hill east of Akron	1,415
Hilltops south of Blair, Nebraska	1,350
South of Louisville	1,225
Near Turlington	1,195
From east to west:	
Bluffs near Platte Center	1,645
Bluffs near Schuyler	1,610
Summit near Mapleville	1,432
Summit west of Kennard	1,285
Hills west of Calhoun	1,250
Guthrie, Iowa	1,290
Plain at Friend, Nebraska	1,575
Knolls at Friend, Nebraska	1,600
Plain at Dorchester	1,500
Hilltops northeast of Crete	1,450
Cheney, general level	1,435
Cheney knolls	1,460

It may be conceived that at least the western portion of the region was at one time a nearly level plain, out of which the valleys of the present streams have been excavated. The original surface of the plain has been quite perfectly preserved away from the larger streams. Between the Platte and the Elkhorn this is true as far east as the headwaters of Maple Creek. South of the Platte the plain extends as far east as David City and the Big Blue. Traces of the plain, in the form of high flat-topped hills, are found as far east as the Missouri and beyond; but the whole region was probably never filled to a level plain. Several things seem to indicate that when the region was first vacated by the depositing waters it was not a completely filled basin. We would not assume to decide between a lacustrine or fluvial deposition; probably both played a part. We proceed to give some of these because they also illustrate the peculiarities of the present surface.

Basins and knolls.—Even when the surface is most nearly a perfect plain, as in the region west of the Big Blue, there are shallow basins with clayey bottoms and corresponding swells. Along south of the Platte about Osceola the same is true, and farther eastward about David City both features are upon a grander scale. Some of the basins are more than a mile in breadth and the knolls and ridges from 25 to 40 feet. The aspect suggests the former extension of a shallow lake in which there were low islands or bars. Farther north, about the headwaters of Logan Creek, similar features, though much modified by erosion, are noticed in the topography, but erosion has cut down the basins, leaving the hills much more elevated, though still showing the same isolated and irregular arrangement. Doubtless winds have had a mild dune effect upon the loess.

Elevated ridges.—In the northern part of the region under consideration a conspicuous feature of the topography are the high, somewhat discontinuous northwest-southeast ridges. One extends from near the mouth of the Verdigris to the vicinity of Bazile Mills. Another begins east of Santee Agency with a lofty spur running out several miles from the northern edge of the table-land north. It extends down into the southeast corner of Knox County. Another begins southeast of Yankton and extends southeastward to the West Bow. Another begins near St. James and extends southeast into Dixon County, and possibly into the Winnebago Reservation.

These ridges are more narrow and conspicuous toward the north, and may possibly be looked upon as the high watershed separating the intervening streams. Their surface features are doubtless due to erosion, but the prevalence of this direction remains unexplained. We must look for it in some peculiarity in the original surface where the courses of the present streams were begun.

In the list of elevations given, the summits of these ridges were taken rather than of lower surfaces between.

Ancient channels.—This directs our attention to another problematic

feature. This embraces certain channel-like valleys which are found in northern Nebraska crossing the divide between the tributaries of the Missouri which run in a northerly direction and those which have a southerly direction. Their characteristics are best preserved upon the watersheds, because there they are least modified by erosion. The one passing near Coleridge, Nebraska, may be taken as a type of the whole. It connects Bow Creek with the upper waters of Middle Creek, a branch of the Logan. It is a valley from 3 to 4 miles in width, showing two or three subordinate channels or intervalles running approximately parallel with one another and depressed from 30 to 50 feet below the broad, flat ridges between them, which at one time may have been bars or islands in the ancient stream. These terrace-like ridges are covered with a thin layer of loess, under which is found gravelly clay 20 or 30 feet higher than the channels. In the bottom of the channels, after penetrating the soil, which is deep and rich, sand of indefinite depth is struck. Coleridge, which occupies the summit of this channel upon the divide, has an altitude, according to railroad levels, of 1,672 feet. The altitude of a high loess ridge southwest of Coleridge is 1,800 feet, and a similar ridge 5 miles east of Coleridge is about 1,825 feet high. Northwestward from Hartington the general surface is much eroded and distinct traces of the channel are not found. However, there is nothing to forbid the opinion that the channel formerly extended in that direction.¹

A similar channel passes from the Verdigris to the Bazile at Creighton, thence southeast up the latter stream to Plainview, where it is $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles in width, and does not present the complex appearance which was noticed at Coleridge. From this point it continues in a direct southeasterly direction to the north branch of the Elkhorn at Pierce.

A smaller valley, which passes from the east branch of the Bazile at Kemma southeast to the north branch of the Elkhorn, presents similar characters. These channels in Nebraska are all much eroded toward the northern end by existing streams.

Areas sloping away from principal streams.—Another character of the topography, which is unlike that usually found in the chance arrangement of streams upon an even plain surface, is the frequent occurrence of drainage from the immediate vicinity of the principal streams to some subordinate stream. This is remarkably true along the southern side of the Platte Valley. For nearly 100 miles the waters falling immediately south of the edge of the bluffs, instead of making their way into the Platte, are carried away southward into the tributaries of the Big Blue. Even where small streams turn northward, as Bone Creek and Skull Creek, the bluffs rise precipitously next to the Platte Valley, and the waters, which eventually flow northward, are first turned south-

¹Since the above was written, facts and considerations presented by Gilbert, Bain, Udden, and others have led the writer to give greater prominence to wind action in explaining the irregularities of surface mentioned.

ward through the narrow valleys of these creeks. So with the Elkhorn on its southern side from the vicinity of Wisner to Scribner, the land slopes from the very top of the bluffs southward and southwestward. Along the northern side the same feature prevails. Such subordinate streams as Plum Creek, Cuming Creek east of West Point, Bell Creek, and the west branch of the Papillion, draw from the very summit of the bluffs along the Elkhorn. The same feature may be occasionally found along the present valley of the Missouri, but its greater depression and the probably less original elevation of its bluffs render it less prevalent and less evident. On a grander scale the whole of the northeastern corner of Nebraska may be instanced as an example of this feature, sloping, as it does, away from the eastward-flowing portion of the Missouri. Along the east branch of the Big Sioux, from the northern line of Iowa southward, a similar relation carries the waters from its near vicinity into Rock River.

All of these features, when traced back to their beginning, point toward inequalities in their original surface of greater or less magnitude. Further reasons for believing that this original surface was uneven will be found in the section treating of the relations of the loess to the drift.

Principal streams.—The central stream is the Missouri. Its valley north of Yaukton resembles in every respect that in the regions already described, but east of Yankton it puts on quite a different appearance. While its bluffs are still high along the south side, they show no older formation except near their bases. The valley suddenly widens to a breadth of from 8 to 10 miles. This breadth it retains to the mouth of the Big Sioux, where it is somewhat increased. South of Sioux City it attains a breadth in places of more than 15 miles. At Blair the valley begins to narrow, and near Rockport, southeast of Calhoun, it is about 3 miles wide. It is a significant fact that at this point the Carboniferous limestone begins to appear near the water level. Farther south the valley is very rarely more than 5 miles wide, and while the slope of the stream from Sioux City to this point has been about 6 inches per mile it now increases to 1 foot per mile, which it continues to the southern line of Iowa. The valley of the Missouri is bounded everywhere in the loess region with steep bluffs of that material, rising 250 to 400 feet above the low, flat, bottom lands between. Where they have been longest subject to erosion the loess, which usually constitutes from one-half to three-fourths of the height, stands at an angle of from 40° to 60° , while drift makes a much smaller angle with the horizon, and the older rocks stand out as a shelf or shoulder.

Three important streams enter this region from the west—the Niobrara, the Elkhorn, and the Platte. The first, which barely enters, flows in a narrow valley 300 to 400 feet deep. The other two have very wide valleys, especially in their middle course, and are depressed from 250 to 300 feet below the general level. Their slopes nearly coincide with the slope of the region.

Tributary streams and creeks are numerous throughout the whole region. They are fed by perennial springs, and usually run in narrow ravines from 5 to 20 feet deep.

Terraces.—Although the subject of terraces will be treated more fully in another place, a few words seem called for in this connection. Along the principal streams the present flood plain is at an elevation of from 5 to 20 feet. The bottoms of their valleys are principally occupied by land upon this level. Traces of other benches from 15 to 30 feet are not infrequently of considerable extent. Besides these more recent terraces there are conspicuous traces on most streams of a terrace at from 60 to 100 feet above the present stream. Traces of this high terrace are found along the Missouri from Herman to De Soto, in Washington County, Nebraska; also in the vicinity of Fort Calhoun it is finely exhibited for several miles. At North Omaha and at Bellevue it has considerable extent and an altitude of about 50 feet.

Along the Platte we find a high terrace on the north side of the present valley extending from Hall County, where it is low and much obscured by sand hills, to the vicinity of Fremont, where it has an altitude of about 80 feet. Its northern edge is marked by the lower course of the Loup River, Shell Creek, and Maple Creek. There are ancient channels connecting these streams with one another at their nearest points. Its width is from 3 to 4 miles. From the vicinity of North Bend an old channel, 8 miles in width and on the same level with the terrace to the north, extends southeast along the east side of Sand and Wahoo creeks to the vicinity of Ashland.

Along the Elkhorn the terrace before mentioned, north of Fremont, extends northward on the west side of the Elkhorn to Scribner. Little trace of this terrace has been found above that point, partly because it is obscured by sand hills, partly because the region has not been fully examined upon that point.

Traces of this high terrace are found along Bazile, Beaver, Bow, and Logan creeks in Nebraska. In Iowa traces of it are found along the Big Sioux near Beloit and Fairview, and along several of the streams on the east side of the Missouri, which have not, however, been examined sufficiently to warrant a more complete description.

Elsewhere, and in general, the topography of the loess region finely illustrates the principles of erosion when applied to a homogeneous deposit. Remote from streams the hills have a gently rounded form, extending to the edge of the deep ravines which furrow the bottom of the valleys. These ravines increase in depth toward their head, where they terminate abruptly with perpendicular or even overhanging banks. Toward the principal streams the slopes of the hills gradually become steeper. Where undermined by eroding streams they frequently present bare perpendicular faces 20 to 50 or even 100 feet in height. In general the topography is of the erosive type prevalent in massive sandstone regions, for the loess resembles sandstone in its resistance to the various

weathering agencies. From its tendency to stand in steep slopes along the streams Professor Swallow, of Missouri, early named it the Bluff deposit.

Sand hills.—Beneath the drift over much of this region is a deep deposit of fine sand presumably belonging to the Pliocene epoch. In the northern portion of Cedar and Knox counties the lower valleys are much widened by the unusual recession of their sides, which may be ascribed to their undermining because of the presence of this deposit. The sand is considerably mingled with the soil and gives a pleasing smoothness to the landscape.

This sand deposit comes to the surface and occupies much of the country west of the Verdigris and the ancient channel before mentioned, which runs southeast from Creighton. The western boundary of the loess is there, and as far south as the Platte, obscured by the advance of the sand eastward. Sand hills and "clay hills" are indescribably mingled. The "clay" closely resembles, if it is not identical with, the loess. It probably is a deposit of the Loup River epoch. The ancient channel between Creighton and Pierce, more especially south of its summit, shows an interesting series of transverse ridges of sand, vast ripples, as it were, rising from 25 to 60 feet above the intervening clayey meadows. They are at quite regular intervals of $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. Traces of sand are found in the wash of the hillsides as far east as Cedar County. At several other localities also there occur sand hills which, though formed by the wind, have had their material brought into the region by the instrumentality of streams. The Elkhorn and the Platte, flowing through sandy regions, accumulate large quantities of sand in their bars and bottom lands. When this sand is driest and most widely exposed the whole region is subject to prevalent winds from the northwest; the result is that, wherever these streams run toward the southeast for some distance, large quantities of sand are blown from the valleys out upon the upland. In this way one may take a map and with considerable confidence tell where such sand hills will be found. They have been observed occupying several square miles south of Stanton. They are prominently developed, and are more conspicuous because of their elevation east and southeast of West Point. They are frequently interspersed with small ponds. South of the Platte they have been observed near the mouth of Bone Creek northeast of David City, and in a very extensive area south of Kearney. They also occur in corresponding positions along the branches of the Loup River. Much of the broad valley north of the Platte is occupied by sand hills.

DRIFT DEPOSITS OF THE LOESS REGION.

The drift of this region may become the subject of much controversy as concerns its origin. We therefore propose to present, as completely as our space will allow, the data which have been gathered.

TILL.

The lowest and most important formation is here, as elsewhere, the till. It presents the usual appearance of a homogeneous matrix of clay containing pebbles and boulders scattered through it, with rarely any trace of stratification or segregation of any sort. It also contains irregular masses or pockets filled with stratified gravel, sand, or silt.

Color.—The prevalent color, when unaffected by weathering or leaching, is a bright lead blue. Sometimes, however, it is a dull grayish brown. It abounds, especially in its lower portions, in white pebbles of limestone and quartz, which in a fresh surface present a striking appearance upon the blue background. The upper portions of the till, where it has been long subject to weathering, or where the frequency of porous layers or seams has carried the surface waters into the clay, are of a yellowish appearance, which below sometimes shades into a reddish color and above into a dull buff.

Joints.—The clay always presents a jointed appearance, these joints running in all directions, dividing a deposit into polygonal masses. These masses are continually subdivided as the process of weathering goes on. In the freshly exposed blue till these masses may be 3' or 4 feet across, and the seams are correspondingly prominent. They appear in some cases, which we may consider an earlier stage, as mere cracks cutting the mass irregularly. They more frequently show traces of accumulation in the form of thin calcareous or selenite plates. Seams have been found where the selenite plates were from one-eighth to one-half inch in thickness. In some cases the selenite shows a coating of flour-like gypsum, and in some cases, toward the surface of the deposit, where it is more changed, the whole seam is filled with such material. The color of the blue clay adjoining these seams gradually changes through different stages to a dull yellow. As the selenite plates increase in thickness these weathered portions as a rule also increase in thickness. Some of the measurements of observed cases are as follows: Measuring from the center of the seam either way, one-eighth inch flour-like gypsum, one-eighth inch drab clay, three-fourths inch bluish, then the surrounding blue clay; another, one-half inch cream-colored core, 3 inches yellow clay, 2½ inches whitish yellow, then the blue clay. More convincing evidence in favor of the conclusion that the yellow till is merely the weathered portion of the blue could scarcely be imagined. This change of color in this case corresponds with what is uniformly observed of the drab-colored layers of the chalkstone, of the similarly colored beds of the Benton and the Pierre clays, and also of the blue limestone of the Carboniferous and Paleozoic rocks generally.

Local indications of subaqueous origin.—There are several features of the till in this region which favor the conclusion that it is of subaqueous origin. While the previous description may be taken without qualification as to general structure, there are exceptions found, as

follows: (1) Its colors are sometimes arranged in a horizontally banded manner. This has been observed repeatedly along the Platte southwest of Fremont, where ashy and chalky layers occasionally appear; (2) while the erratics usually have no perceptible arrangement, they are sometimes arranged in horizontal lines; perhaps a dozen pebbles lie within a few feet of one another upon the same level, where as many more of similar size could not be found in as many yards; (3) another fact which, although it does not pertain to the structure of the till, has an important bearing on the question of its subaqueous origin, is the resting of the till upon the nearly horizontal surface of stratified sand and clays of pre-Glacial origin without their slightest distortion.

The upper portion of the till which presents the yellowish colors frequently abounds in calcareous concretions, some of irregular globular form, others, occupying the larger seams, of sheet-like form. Sometimes these concretions have to a considerable degree the appearance of disintegrated chalk.

RED CLAY.

The second member of the drift we will designate as the red clay, for no other characters seem more constant. It usually lies above the till. It is never below it, but sometimes is found where no till occurs, and it is sometimes wanting between the till and the loess above. Its more common characters, besides its brownish-red color, are: (1) It is much more clayey than the loess above, and, especially in its upper portion, becomes more loamy than the till below; (2) it uniformly presents a stratified appearance, layers of clayey silt alternating with thicker layers of purer clay. Erratics even several inches in diameter frequently appear in it, and usually in a more or less stratified condition. These are found in greater abundance toward the base of the formation. Its upper portion, for several feet in depth, may be entirely free from them. Its stratification may be obscure either when it has been somewhat weathered or when the exposure is of a more clayey stratum.

Its upper surface is nearly always distinctly marked, but its lower surface not infrequently passes into the till without a clear line of separation. This feature has been noted at lower levels near the principal streams. In the northwestern portion of the region under consideration it is overlain by a heavy deposit of gravel, but as a rule the loess rests directly upon it. The darker and redder shade of this member is without doubt due to the greater abundance of ferric oxides, and may indicate that the formation has been more exposed to the air. It may find an analogy in appearance, if not in origin of color, to the weathered portions of ferruginous sandstones.

GRAVEL AND SAND DEPOSITS.

The third member of the drift is composed chiefly of gravel and sand beds, which also abound, usually in their upper portions, with boulders.

These occur mainly in the vicinity of the Missouri and the Big Sioux, their greatest development being in Knox County, Nebraska, and Minnehaha County, South Dakota. In the former locality it constitutes the bulk of the drift.

RELATION OF THE DRIFT TO THE UNDERLYING FORMATIONS.

The formations found beneath the drift are arranged in general in strips extending north-northeast to south-southwest. First in the northwest corner of the region come the Pliocene sands and clays, 50 to 100 feet in thickness. Their southeast margin, at least of their thicker development, extends approximately from near the northwest corner of Dixon County past Coleridge, Stanton, and Columbus, southward. An area along the Split Rock in Minnehaha County, South Dakota, is also doubtfully referred to this epoch. Similar deposits have been observed also along the Big Sioux east of Canton, and nearer Fairview, South Dakota, and northwest of Sioux City; also near Lemars and Cherokee, Iowa. This formation along the Missouri rises to an elevation of nearly 400 feet above the river in Knox County, Nebraska, and diminishes in altitude to the east. Along the line outlined as bounding its thicker development it does not diminish much in altitude toward the south. The Missouri, Elkhorn, and Platte southeast of this line have cut through it to the older formations below, and, it would seem, have removed much of its thickness. The Niobrara chalkstone appears next east of and underneath the Pliocene. Its eastern limit approximately extends from near Brandon, South Dakota, southward along the Big Sioux, where it is exposed at Canton and Akron, also at Ponca, west of Dakota City, at West Point, Skull Creek, Milford, Pleasant Hill, and beyond. The Benton clays are but feebly developed. The next formation, the Dakota sandstone, appears quite prominently. Its eastern limit extends from near Dakota City past Tekama, Louisville, Beatrice, and beyond. It is found also in detached areas near Lewis and Red Oak, and northeast of Sioux City, Iowa. The upper Carboniferous underlies this and extends farther west than the east limit of South Dakota. It occupies the remainder of the loess region in Nebraska and Iowa, with the exception of small detached areas of Tertiary of indefinite extent.

These rocks seem to have been excavated in the form of a broad valley along the Missouri, with its bottom from 15 to 150 feet above the present level of the Missouri, but in the bottom of this valley the immediate channel of the Missouri and other streams seem to have been excavated to the present depth or even to a greater.

The drift, where it has been observed, rests upon the surface of the underlying formations without disturbing them, except in a few rare cases. The general fact may be illustrated by numerous sections taken from Knox County, Nebraska, and a few from southwestern Iowa. In the former locality the drift is found in some places resting upon a

deposit of volcanic ashes more than 3 feet in thickness, which, though very friable, shows no disturbance. About a mile east of Osmond it was found resting on a gray pebbleless clay, and conformably. In Mills

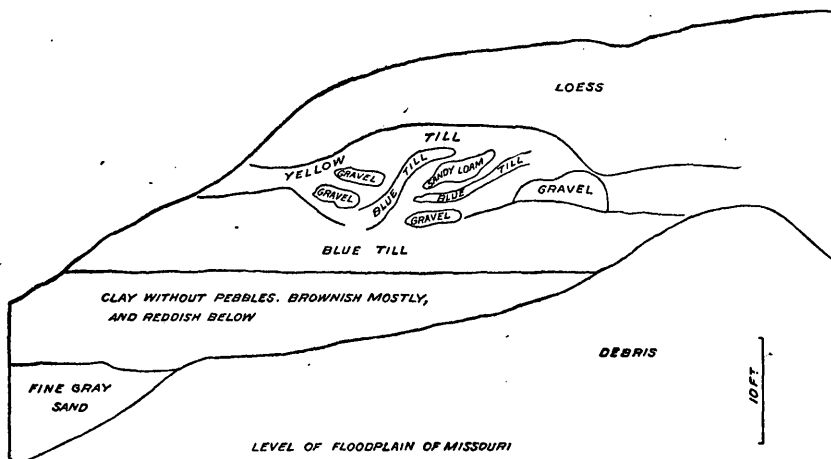


FIG. 14.—Exposure showing base of the till north of Pacific Junction, Iowa.

County, Iowa, typical blue till was found resting upon a grayish-brown clay from 5 to 10 feet in thickness containing no pebbles, and this in turn upon sand (fig. 14). Neither showed signs of disturbance. Near Ben-

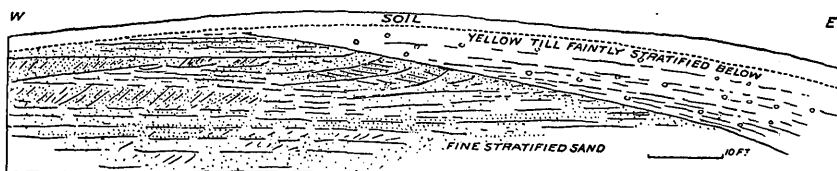


FIG. 15.—Exposure showing base of the till near Berks, Nebraska.

nett and Roca, Nebraska, drift was found resting upon Carboniferous clays without apparent disturbance. Near Berks, Nebraska, it was found resting upon an inclined surface of stratified sand with no traces of disturbance in either (fig. 15).

STRIATION OF UNDERLYING ROCKS.

While what has been given seems to indicate the general gentle deposition of the drift, at least in deeper or more protected localities of the old surface, there are a number of cases where great force has been exerted in a horizontal direction. Striæ have been observed in the following localities: About Sioux Falls the surface of the quartzite is planed and striated generally toward a direction varying from S. 8° E. to S. 43° E., but some were from the west. Southeast of Sioux Falls, about the northwest corner of Iowa, the surface of the quartzite is smooth and striated in a similar manner, in direction from S. 8° E. to S. 53° E., the majority of cases corresponding with the course of the Big Sioux.

A few miles north of Valley Springs striae varying from S. 8° E. to S. 63° E. were abundant on the polished red quartzite. So far as is known, no distinct striae have been observed on any other formation except the Carboniferous limestones south of the Platte in Nebraska and adjacent portions of Iowa. Very faint indications of motion from the north-northwest of superincumbent blocks of bowldery clay were noticed south of Roca, Nebraska. At Bennett, about 9 miles east, the surface of the limestone was found planed and covered with striae indicating a movement S. 41° to 43° W. This was on the northeast side of a hill looking toward a valley opening in that direction. A rod or two west of that point a few striae toward S. 17° W. were found, and still farther west at one point striae were found toward S. 61° W. and S. 9° E. It is a notable fact that this latter locality was simply a few square feet of surface on the same level surface with many square rods of limestone which, though covered with till, showed no signs of smoothing or striation. On the north side of the valley a mile away another slight trace of striae was found, indicating motion toward S. 88° W. South of Plattsmouth a considerable surface of the limestone, about 40 feet above the river, is planed with striae from east of north.

Upon the limestone ledges 3 or 4 miles south of Pacific Junction, Iowa, striae are found at localities differing about 50 feet in elevation. They are mainly of two sets, S. 9° E. and S. 40° E. Meek, in Hayden's Final Report on Nebraska (p. 92), records near the mouth of the Platte S. 10° W. [mag.]. Dr. White in his Iowa report, Vol. I, p. 94, mentions a locality opposite Council Bluffs, now obliterated, 6 to 8 feet above high water, where the direction was S. 41° W. Prof. S. Aughey, former State geologist of Nebraska, reported striae near Beatrice, Roca, and Syracuse, also along the Platte at several points, which have an average direction of S. 19° E. In a quarry south of Unadilla, Nebraska, though no striae were found, the different blocks in the upper layer were tipped down toward the north without being apparently moved from their position. Two miles northeast of Tabor, Iowa, planation was widely shown, but the stone is now removed and the direction has not been ascertained.

DISTRIBUTION OF THE DRIFT.

For convenience under this topic, we will divide the drift into Nebraska, Dakota, and Iowa divisions.

THE DRIFT IN NEBRASKA.

South of Niobrara, Nebraska, at an elevation of over 400 feet above the Missouri, is an extensive exposure of clayey gravel capping the hills. This seems to be from 15 to 25 feet in thickness and to rest upon light-colored clay. Farther south the loess appears above it, and bowlders abound in it, especially in its upper portion. East of the Bazile there is the same general appearance, but below fine sand begins to show itself in the sides of the bluffs.

Volcanic ash stratum.—Underneath the drift a layer of grayish-white volcanic ashes begins to show itself 5 or 6 miles southwest of Santee Agency and is exposed here and there for at least 6 miles eastward. The localities noted are SW. $\frac{1}{4}$ secs. 27 and 35, T. 33 N., R. 4 W. At the former place it is underlain by a stratum of laminated clay crowded with fresh-water shells. Prof. R. E. Call has determined them to be mostly *Limnophysa decidiosa*. This stratum has been observed to be more than 3 feet thick. The ash seems to pass both laterally and above into a whitish marl. Both are 450 to 475 feet above the Missouri River.

Mr. Andreas Lundteigen, chemist for the Yankton Cement Works, who was interested in the deposit from a business standpoint, has kindly given me the following analysis of a sample taken from the top of the former bed on Mr. Wakana's land: Silica, 72.44 per cent; lime, 0.55 per cent; alumina and oxide of iron, 14.78 per cent; loss by ignition, 4.28 per cent; total, 92.05 per cent. A sample from the bottom did not differ materially.

A stratum exactly similar in composition has been found near West Point (Pl. XI), on the West Blue southwest of Milford, and also along the Missouri about 7 miles north of Omaha, Nebraska (Pl. XII). At all points it occurs in the drift, not below it. At West Point it is found from 4 to 6 feet thick, at the second point 1 to 5 feet, and near Omaha 18 inches. Specimens were submitted to Mr. J. S. Diller, of the Geological Survey, who has pronounced them volcanic dust, composed chiefly (90 per cent) of minute angular fragments of pumiceous glass. Besides these are numerous (10 per cent) grains of quartz sand, well rounded, indicating that the ashes fell into quite water.

If, as seems not improbable, these different beds were deposited simultaneously, how may we account for their being below the drift in Knox County and in the drift in Cuming and Seward counties? By reference to a list of elevations further on we find the altitude to be now in the first case over 1,600 feet, and in the other less than 1,500, the second being less than 1,350 feet. Even making liberal allowance for changes of level since their deposition, we can readily believe that the deposition of drift, assuming its subaqueous origin, began at the lower levels before the volcanic outburst, and did not reach the northern localities till later. The apparent haphazard occurrence of the ashes in Knox County may be readily explained by their preservation only in lagoons along the ancient Niobrara. When they fell on the land rains would soon wash them away, and when in the main stream they would be swept onward and mixed with other sediments. The idea that they fell in ponds is further supported by the occurrence of the fossiliferous clay immediately below.

If we accept the more commonly received hypothesis that the till is the product of land ice, we may suppose that the older ice sheet advanced to the altitude of West Point from the Des Moines Valley, while the occupation of the Dakota Valley was later. Or we may sup-



NEAR VIEW OF VOLCANIC ASH STRATUM IN BLUFF ABOVE WEST POINT, NEBRASKA.

pose that the deposits were simply formed in bayous along the adjacent streams when they were flowing at high levels. It should not be forgotten, however, that it is by no means certain that the ash beds in different localities were deposited at the same time.

There is little loess upon the surface of the drift for several miles east of the Bazile, and erosion has cut this bed of gravel into abrupt knolls, which are very conspicuous. Near the Bazile and along How Creek erosion has also sapped the sandy formation so that the gravel-topped knobs have sunk bodily toward the streams.

Farther east, about 5 miles southeast of Santee Agency, the loess begins to so cover the drift that it is almost entirely hidden, except along the face of the bluffs toward the Missouri. Its continued gravelly character is well shown southwest of Herrick, about what is called the Devils Nest, a descriptive name for two or three very deep ravines excavated through the loess, drift, and Tertiary sands to a depth of over 100 feet. One of the most complete sections found is at or near the northwest corner of T. 32 N., R. 3 W. The whole section, from the summit of an adjacent hill, is as follows:

Section near the northwest corner of T. 32 N., R. 3 W.

	Feet.	In.
Slope, probably loess, though boulders were found near the summit....	50	0
Loess exposed	4	0
Stratified sand, gravel, and bowlderets of granite, greenstone, etc.....	0	8-18
Reddish, loamy, joint clay containing northern pebbles.....	15	0
Fine white sand, stratified	7	0
Reddish clay and rusty sand	4	0
Stratified lead colored clay	14-2	0
Fine sand	15	0
Wet efflorescent clay	0	8-10
Sand	4	0
Clayey sand	3-4	0
Whitish marl alternating with layers of sand.....	50	0

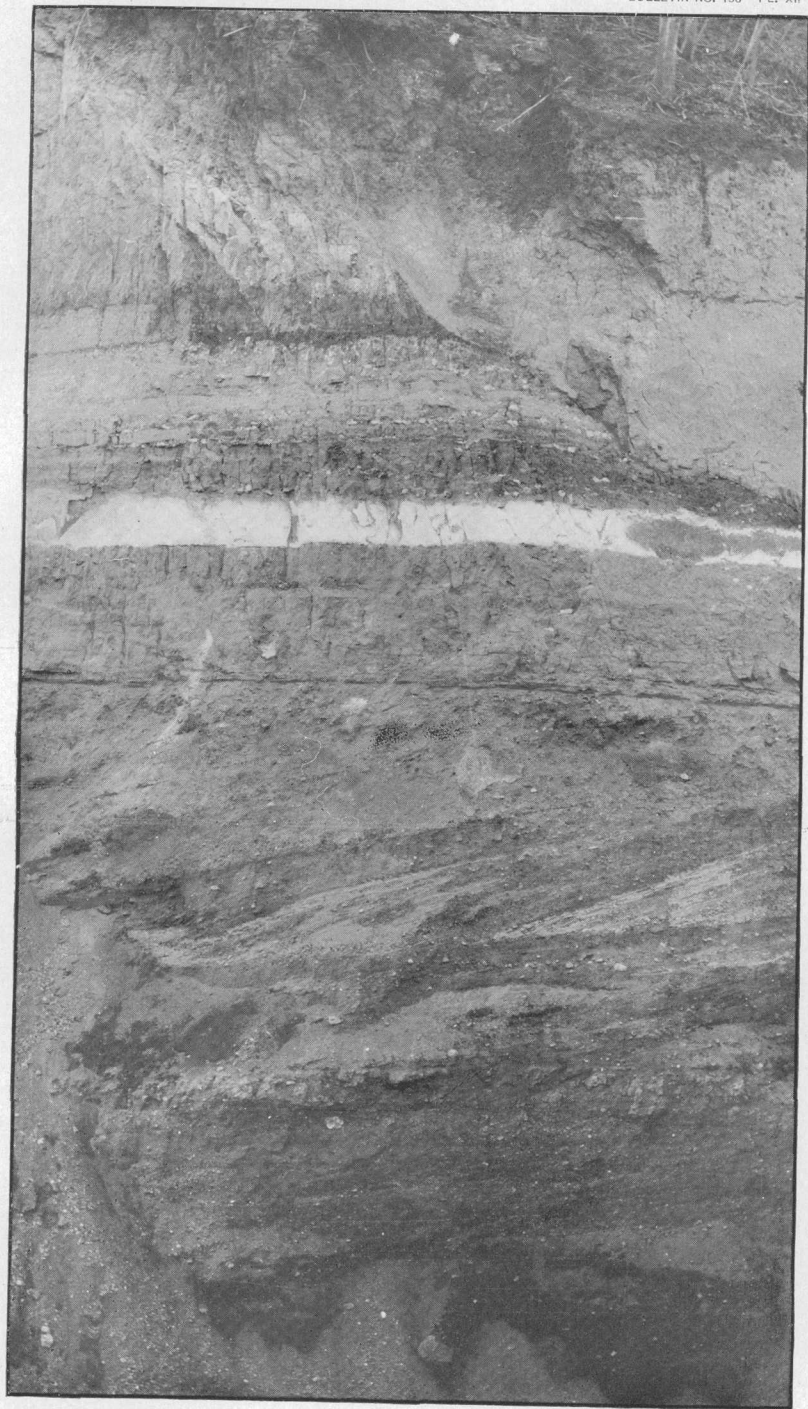
In another section several rods west, below the loess, which was about on a level with a corresponding point in the preceding section, the strata were as follows:

Section several rods west of the preceding.

	Feet.	In.
Stratified gravel and boulders, about four coarse layers with fine sand alternating, all sorts of northern erratics present.....	44	0
Laminated loamy clay with two layers of pebbles	3	0
Fine gray sand passing into 2 feet of chalky clay.....	16	0
Grayish checky clay, stratified, with fossil planorbis and other fresh-water shells, and a few small pebbles.....	3	0
Sand containing fragments of chalkstone and of large bones and teeth.....	1	0
Chalky clay	6	0

A general section showing several exposures noted is given in fig. 16.

The gravelly drift is also made prominent by its capping long spurs extending northward along the northern edge of the loess table-land.



BLUFF ABOVE FLORENCE, NEBRASKA, SHOWING ASH STRATUM.

miles south of Hartington, comes from the underlying sand, as does also a magnificent spring 4 miles west of Coleridge.

The sand below the drift, which is there nearly pure coarse stratified gravel, is finely shown in a cut $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles north of Coleridge. It is pure and stratified in thin layers (Pl. XIII).

In a cut near Hartington, Nebraska, the drift was found resting upon a calcareous marl much resembling loess, and differing from it principally in its more distinctly stratified character. It furnished numerous specimens of fresh-water shells, which Prof. R. E. Call, to whom they have been submitted, has identified as follows:

Valvata tricarinata Say.

Succinea obliqua Say.

Gyraulus parvus Say.

Sphaerium striatinum Lam.

Limnophysa decidiosa Say.

Limnophysa palustris [?], imperfect specimen.

Two or 3 miles east of Hartington a similar exposure was noticed in the bank of the East Bow. It seems probable that this is a late Tertiary deposit, probably belonging to the Equus beds of Cope.

The gravelly character of the drift continues south along its western limit as far at least as Creighton. East of that place, at an elevation of about 110 feet above the station, abundant traces of gravel are found by the roadside through a vertical distance of about 10 feet, above which the loess begins to appear. About $5\frac{1}{2}$ miles east of Creighton a well freshly bored was noticed at the place of Mr. D. C. Cleveland, who kindly gave me several facts, not only in regard to his own well but in regard to those in the vicinity. This well was on the general level, 150 feet above Creighton, or 1,767 above the sea. A section of the well was nearly as follows: Seventy or 75 feet of loess-like clay with no pebbles above but with numerous calcareous concretions, a few pebbles below, passing into pure gravel, which extended down to a depth of 80 feet. Below the gravel was 10 feet of fine sand. This, he told me, was the common experience in wells of that vicinity. He had the impression that water was found nearly upon a level. A well half a mile west, starting about 30 feet lower, is about 125 or 130 feet deep and has 22 feet of water. In it there was only about 40 feet of the loess-like clay. In digging wells blue clay is not usually found, but in a well about 2 miles southeast, in a valley, 2 or 3 feet of blue clay was found above sand. Whether the blue clay contained pebbles or not he was unable to say. A well bored half a mile south, 100 feet deep, was nearly or quite all in sand. A northwest-southeast line passing about half a mile south of his place marks the northern boundary of a sandy region—the ancient channel passing by Creighton and Plainview to the north branch of the Elkhorn. This line seems part of the eastern boundary of the region supplied with water from the Pliocene sands. No further trace of drift was found till we came to the upper branches of the Bow in the southern part of T. 33 N., R. 1 W., where

the drift appears again as a gravelly terrace in the sides of the principal valleys. An old resident of the region remarked that the bowlders were mostly upon the surface. This was found to agree with our observations. Because of the unusual variations of the barometer the elevation of the drift at this point was not well determined, but from its relation to the general level of the country we judge it somewhat lower than near Creighton. About Hartington and Coleridge beds of gravel and bowlders appear up to an altitude of about 1,760 feet. This elevation was noticed in the sides of the valley near Coleridge. The elevation in a high range of hills 4 miles southwest of it rises to about 1,625 feet. In the wells about Hartington, according to the testimony of Mr. Reed, a well digger of the place, the wells are from 36 to 50 feet in depth, those upon the lower land being shallower. The water is found apparently upon a level. After passing through soil and several feet of silt and alluvium (this I judge to be the case from a railroad cut near town) white clay in layers is struck and below that plastering sand with pebbles in which specimens of petrified wood are frequently found. At Coleridge, as stated by Mr. Miller, of that place, wells are 35 to 40 feet in depth, passing through about 6 feet of black soil, 17 feet of clay of loess-like character, 3 feet of sand, and then clay again.

At Concord there is 4 feet of soil, then sand without the clay. Passing eastward from Coleridge, bowlders and pebbles are found to the eastern edge of the valley upon the terrace-like tables in the valley before described, underneath the capping of silt, but after leaving the valley no pebbles are seen until the valley of the East Bow is crossed. They then appear upon a few hillsides about the same distance below the highest hilltops as before. No more drift is noticed until we reach the Missouri at Ponca. Everything is covered with loess, which in the valleys has washed down or crept down from its original higher position. In the bluffs south of Vermilion the following section was observed:

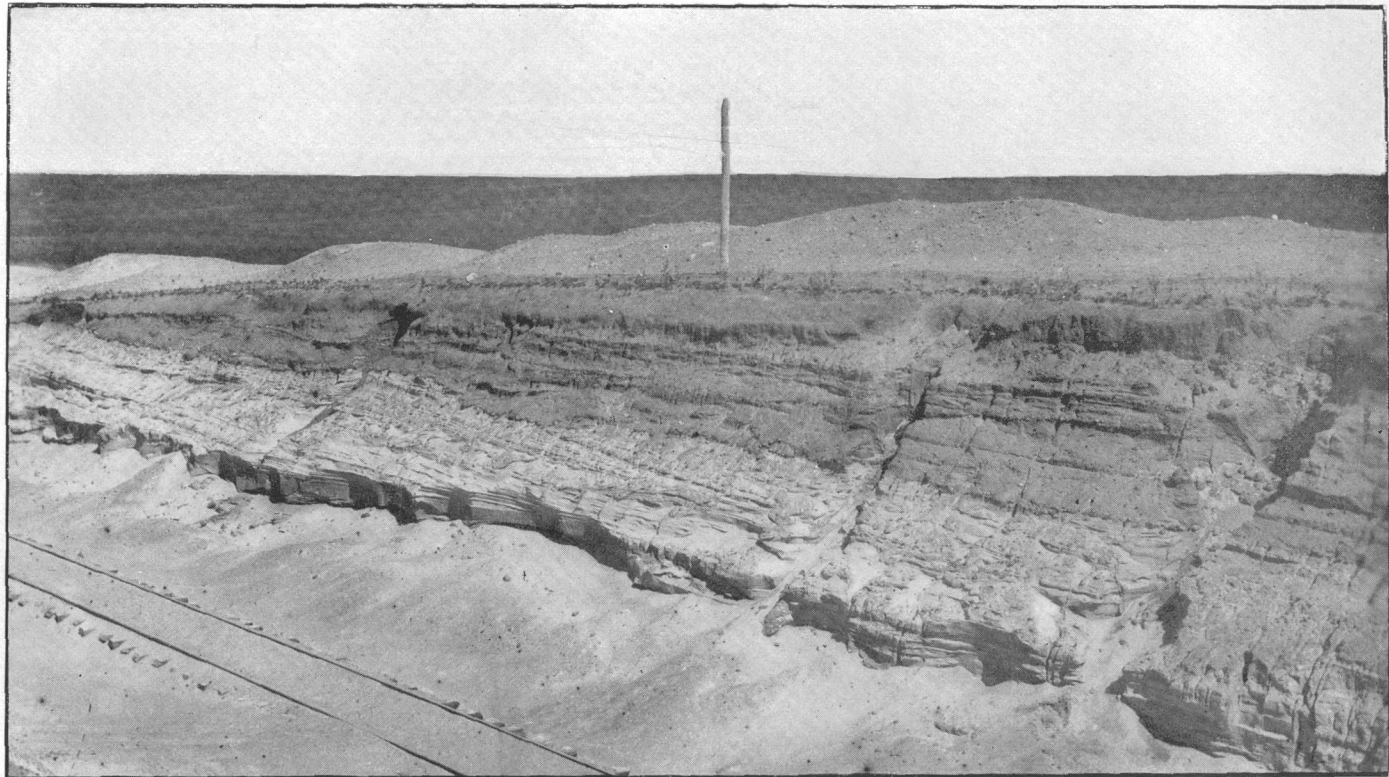
Section of the bluffs south of Vermilion, South Dakota.

Loess with a clayey stratum about 10 feet above its base, and below a few layers of small pebbles interspersed, the base itself a distinct horizontal line.	Feet. 40-50
Bowlders and stratified gravel with clayey patches.	3-4
Coarse orange-colored sand, light above, with reddish streaks.	3-4
Fine white sand with yellowish streaks.	5-6
Cretaceous clays of the Benton group.	95
Level of the Missouri.	

At the landing at Ponca another fine exposure was found, for which we had time to make only a hasty estimate, as follows:

Section at the landing at Ponca, Nebraska.

	Feet.	In.
Loess with several feet of sand below.	50	0
"Chalk rock," exposed.	10	0
"Chalk rock," not clearly exposed.	40	0
Dark shale.	10	0
Dark shale or hard clay with yellow layers.	4	0
Coal.	8-10	
Rusty sandstone.	4	0



BASE OF DRIFT NEAR COLERIDGE, NEBRASKA.

Along the Missouri, south of Ponca, drift exposures are not prominent. The older formations rise high and are capped with high bluffs of loess. Southwest along the railroad in Dakota County the cuts exposing drift in any form are scarcely noticeable. Clusters of boulders are reported along the valley of Elk Creek. Near Wakefield a few boulderets and northern pebbles are sometimes struck in deep wells, but generally south of the watershed bounding the immediate valley of the Missouri—that is, including the short streams flowing directly toward it—the whole surface of the country is so deeply buried with loess that northern erratics are almost unknown. Even experienced well diggers will sometimes aver that none are to be found.

More recently the opening of the Pacific Short Line from Sioux City to O'Neil, Nebraska, has afforded much better opportunities for

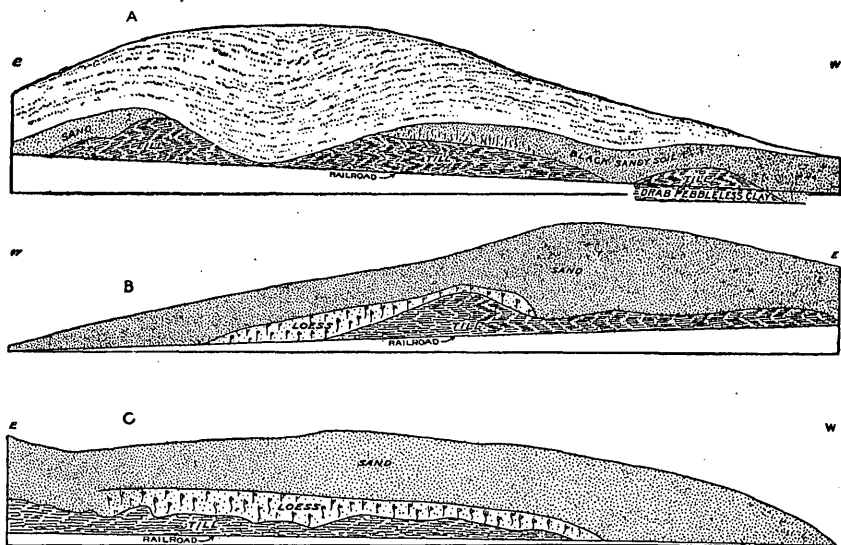


FIG. 17.—First railroad cut east of Osmond, Nebraska. Scale same as on fig. 18.

examining the surface formations of this region. It is particularly instructive between Randolph and Osmond, where it crosses the divide between the west branch of the Logan and the north branch of the Elkhorn. West of Osmond no traces of northern erratics are found except a few pebbles, which are likely to have washed from the hills immediately east. The universal subsoil is sand, which for the most part shows the shaping action of the wind. It occasionally contains grains as large as one-fourth inch long, usually of a light feldspar. In the valleys pebbles, mostly of quartz of different colors and well rounded, and unlike those commonly found in the drift, are found.

The valley of the North Elkhorn, in which Osmond lies, is bounded on the east by hills more abrupt and higher than those on the west, and boulders appear on their sides. The difference in altitude is doubtless due to erosion which has taken place since the deposition of

the drift. About 1 mile east of Osmond, and about 25 feet higher than the station, an exposure at the foot of a north slope showed typical yellow till with few pebbles, resting conformably upon a drab pebbleless clay at least 2 feet thick and exposed for 2 rods. The junction was even, horizontal, and abrupt. One passed completely into the other in less than 6 inches. The relations are shown in figs. 17 and 18. As the road rose along the east side of the valley the exposures of yellow till were found appearing regularly, usually with the upper surface rounded similar to the present surface, but not always corresponding, sometimes showing no correspondence. It is overlain by sand, loess, red loamy clay, or gray till, without trace of an old soil or distinct weathering. The ashy colors may perhaps indicate action of vegetation near water level, or in some cases more likely more direct derivation from the drab Cretaceous clays. The annexed figures show the relations of surfaces of the different formations.

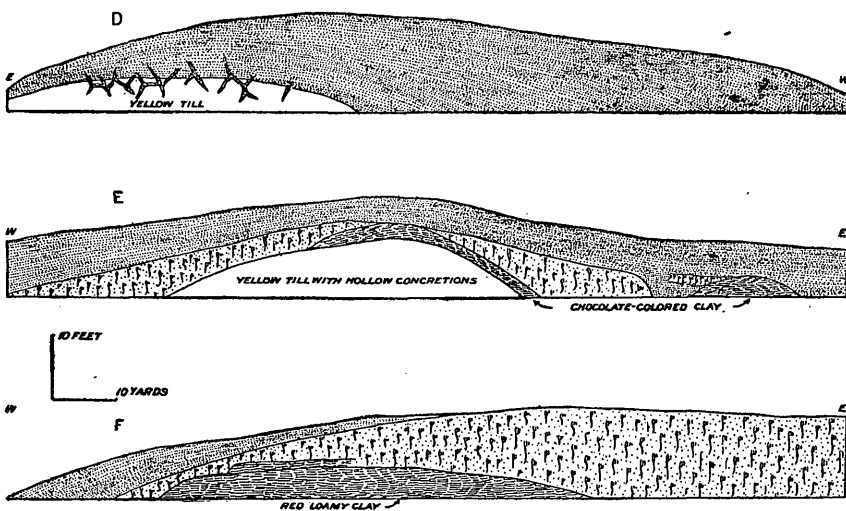


FIG. 18.—Cuts east of Osmond, Nebraska.

About 150 feet above Osmond, on the west slope of the divide, a flat area covering perhaps a square mile was noticed. From the cuts along its west and north sides it seemed to be underlain by till and topped with 20 to 30 feet of loess and sand. These last seem to intermingle indiscriminately. In some places they are interstratified. The adjoining figures sufficiently illustrate their relations. The higher ridges, rising 50 to 75 feet higher than this flat, are probably composed entirely of these materials. They usually extend northwest to southeast.

Besides the formations already mentioned there is also found a chocolate-colored variety of the reddish loam, which is darker than the usual shade of the loam. It is usually found in patches upon the latter at higher levels. The gray, pebbly clay which was noted nearly filling one of the cuts on the west side of the till flat also shows more of a chocolate shade above.

One very remarkable feature of the clays shown at higher levels, in places very conspicuously, is the occurrence of great cracks like ordinary mud cracks in their general features and arrangement, but on a vastly larger scale. They are frequently 8 to 12 inches wide at the surface of the clay and penetrate it 4 to 6 feet. They are filled with sand from the deposit above. The sand in the cracks and that directly above them for 2 or 3 feet is unstratified, while the surrounding sand is distinctly and horizontally stratified. The sand is not in the least mixed with the clay in the sides of the cracks. The cracks penetrate yellow and chocolate or gray clays alike.

Several inferences may be fairly drawn from these phenomena: (1) The till was very wet when first exposed to the air; (2) it became very dry before the advent of the sand; (3) the chocolate clays and yellow clays were deposited about the same time as the clay and have passed through similar circumstances; (4) we could not well imagine stronger proof of the subaerial deposition of the sand. Its horizontally stratified character does not indicate deposition in water.

Very limited exposures of pebbly clay have been found, however, about 12 miles north of Winside, and as far southeast, along Humbug Creek; also at a few points along the north branch of the Elkhorn, which have been mentioned elsewhere. Boulders have been reported also as found along Plum Creek and Rock Creek, in Cuming County. Four or 5 miles northwest of West Point are two bends in the Elkhorn which cut deeply into its western bank. The upper one is the more complete. It displays the formation from the general level of the country down to the level of the stream, as follows:

Section on the Elkhorn 4 or 5 miles northwest of West Point, Nebraska.

	Feet.	In.
Loess, its lower surface horizontal and distinct; just above it 3 or 4 feet of compact clayey layer, with a stratum in its upper portion about 8 inches thick blotched with blackish, doubtless due to carbonaceous matter.....	50	0
Red clay, its upper half more loamy, homogeneous and without pebbles. The first 6 feet above its base presents four horizontal bands of checky clay 8 to 10 inches thick, and the next 6 feet above four more thin ones of similar character. These all alternate with sandy or loamy layers. Pebbles of red quartzite are occasionally found in thin, short layers, which occur as high as 20 feet from the base.....	45	0
Whitish clay.....	4	0
White clay or marl.....	2	0

These last two pass laterally into a stratum of volcanic ashes a few rods farther west, away from the river. This volcanic ash bed is horizontally stratified in very thin layers, its texture as fine as flour; its color, for the most part grayish white with yellowish streaks in its upper portion.

Muddy sand, passing laterally into obliquely stratified sand with boulders below.....	24	0
Fine greenish clay, thicker at some points.....	6	
Yellow till.....	4	0
Compact blue till.....	5	0
Level of the river.		

In the lower bend the top of the till is scarcely exposed above the surface of the water. No distinct trace of the ash stratum has been found there, and the horizontal base of the loess, which is very distinctly exposed, showing above the carbonaceous layer, is only about 50 feet above the stream.

At the town of West Point, in a deep clay pit near the summit of a hill northeast of town, a combined section is as follows:

Combined section at West Point, Nebraska.

	Feet.
Loess, sandy above, showing wind-drift structure	30
Dark carbonaceous clay with numerous fragments of shrubs and roots in its upper portion	3-4
Reddish joint clay without pebbles, yellow and laminated above	4-5

On the hillside west, 40 to 50 feet below the bottom of the pit, drift pebbles are scattered.

Perhaps 15 feet lower on the hillside, by the schoolhouse, is an exposure showing about 15 feet reddish and yellow till, with a few boulders. The western side of its lower portion slopes abruptly and is overlain for several feet by horizontally stratified sand, which probably corresponds to the sand in the lower part of the high terrace along the Elkhorn farther south. The bottom of this exposure is estimated to be about 30 feet above the railroad, or 45 feet above the Elkhorn.

Where the railroad crosses the west branch of Maple Creek, in the northern part of Colfax County, the following section is exposed:

Section in Colfax County, Nebraska.

	Feet.
Loess surrounding a core of yellow till which is 15 feet in height above the bottom of the cut. This above contains many chalky seams, and exhibits reddish clay and sand upon its slope	25
Eight feet lower the base of the yellow till is exposed in the side of a bank near by and below it.	
Drab-colored pebbly clay and fine stratified sand	2
Clay	1½
Fine stratified sand	3

Between Tekamah and Oakland various cuts along the railroad expose the loess, "old soil," as its dark lower portion is frequently called, and red clay down to the till.

About a mile above Florence a fine section reaching down to the surface of the Missouri may be made by combining two great exposures which are not far apart. From the top of the till west it is as follows:

Section of bluff near Florence, Nebraska.

	Feet.
Timbered slope	50
Loess exposed, lower half considerably darker than above. No dark stratum near base and red clay lacking	35
Till, yellow above, but mostly blue. In a few places small pockets, containing stratified gravel and a few large ones below filled with very fine yellow compact massive sand	75
Level of the river.	

About a half mile north of the last a very different section was finely exposed by excavating for gravel at the time of the building of the Omaha waterworks near Florence. The following is the section (see Pl. XII):

Section half mile north of the last.

	Feet.
Slope	10-20
Loess.....	25-30
Stratified clayey loam, yellow, with many calcareous concretions.....	7
Volcanic dust like that found farther west, except stained with rust	1½
Yellow clayey loam, slightly stratified.....	5
Fine gray sand	½
Coarse sand and pebbles obliquely stratified, mostly of northern origin.....	20
Unexposed, probably part blue till, judging from sections on the opposite side of the river	15-20
Level of water in the Missouri.	

From many sections found along the Platte west of Fremont the following is chosen as probably the most instructive. It is found near the southern end of the old bridge southwest from town.

Section west of Fremont, Nebraska.

	Feet.	In.
Loess, the dark line 3 feet above its base appearing only as thin wavy streaks	30	0
Red clay, passing into drab and rusty below.....	11	0
Whitish clay with many chalky concretions and numerous pebbles, some of them scratched. This deposit ends abruptly at one end and at the other tapers out	2	0
Similar reddish and drab clay with pebbles, but with few if any bowlders..	22	0
Light greenish clay, blotched with white, extending horizontally at least a rod. Its ends are hidden.....	1	2
Reddish clay, passing below into 20 feet till which is yellowish above, but the blue color rises in places near the top.....	11	0
Level of the river.		

Farther east, near the present bridge, a layer of coarse sand obliquely stratified replaces the blue till to the height of 10 or 12 feet above the river. This is probably a portion of the sandy substratum found in the high terrace developed along the north side of the Platte. Farther west, southeast of Timberville, the strata are the same as before given, except that the till is not exposed and the base of the till is 30 feet higher, and between it and the red clay is a stratum of blackish mucky clay 4½ feet thick. In the bluffs south of Linwood bowlders and pebbles abound at a level lying between 50 and 115 feet above the valley to the north. At the lower level several feet of fine stratified sand appears and probably rises considerably higher. Northwest of Schuyler, on the slope of a high bluff overlooking Shell Creek and the Platte Valley, many northern pebbles are found at the height of 175 to 225 feet above the latter. Bowlders abound upon the hillsides in a strip from 10 to 12 miles wide, extending along the western side of Saunders and Lancaster counties nearly to the southwest corner of the latter.

In the railroad cuts between Denton and Berks, southeast of Lincoln,

there are abundant exposures of the drift. About 3 miles east of the latter station the following section is found:

Section southeast of Berks, Nebraska.

	Feet.
Slope from the top of one of the highest hills, which was strewn abundantly with bowlders, to the edge of a deep cut.....	70
Yellow till, mostly exposed, with a few bowlders	30
A few rods southwest of this, in another cut overlapping, is found—	
Fine sand obliquely stratified	15

The yellow till shows obscure traces of stratification in its lower portion in the form of layers of pebbles, and banded arrangements of colors parallel with its lower surface. The sand, on the other hand, bears marks of erosion. Its strata end abruptly against the till, but no trace of distortion in them was discovered. Their eroded surface slopes abruptly toward the east. In lower cuts on the east the fine sand occurs under the drift, sometimes with greenish clay interstratified with its upper layer (see fig. 15).

About 3 miles south of Pleasant Hill, about 20 feet below the general level, the recent digging of a well furnished unusually favorable opportunity for obtaining the following section:

Section near Pleasant Hill, Nebraska.

	Feet.
Black soil	2½
Yellowish clay, passing into the next.....	6
Reddish clay.....	6
Lighter clay, distinctly separated from, but conformable with, the next.....	22
Fine stratified sand, quite compact. Two red quartzite bowlders were found on its upper surface.....	6
Sand interstratified with clayey layers.....	8
Niobrara chalkstone.	

Numerous small bowlders of red quartzite, greenstone, etc., are found in the deeper ravines in that vicinity on the same level with their occurrence in the well. The chalkstone also crops out farther east along Turkey Creek, and underneath it is said to occur a dark carbonaceous layer, probably of the Benton group.

About 8 miles southwest of Milford, in a deep bend in the West Blue, which cuts into its southern bank, the following interesting section¹ was found:

Section 8 miles southwest of Milford, Nebraska.

	Feet.
Soil	2
Red gritty loam.....	6
Stratified loamy clay with thin strata, rounded white quartz pebbles, passing into the next.....	9
Clayey gravel, with a few bowlders of red quartzite, passing into the next....	3
Stratified loamy clay, with streaks of pebbles.....	15
Light-gray siliceous earth, volcanic ashes very evenly laminated.....	½-¾

¹ This section was published in Science, 1887.

Section 8 miles southwest of Milford, Nebraska—Continued.

	Feet.
Clay, darker above, below passing into the next.....	1½
Gray sand, with thin sheets of clay 6 to 12 inches apart.....	5
Coarse sand, with pebbles and bowlders of various sorts resting upon an uneven surface below.....	1
Hard greenish joint clay.....	6
Slope.....	8
Water of the West Blue.	

A few rods distant a less complete but similar section shows the volcanic ash layer 5 feet thick, and it appears along the sides of a ravine for several rods.

The deeper draws west of the Big Blue, in southern Seward County, frequently show beds of gravel corresponding to the upper portion of this section in which the pebbles are mostly, if not entirely, of western origin. Incomplete exposures of drift exhibiting weathered till are found in favorable circumstances over most of the region east of the bowldery strip outlined above, but the deep deposit of loess renders their occurrence quite infrequent. Near the Missouri, and at some points quite remote, the loess is found to rest upon the older rocks without traces of drift between.

THE DRIFT IN SOUTH DAKOTA.

In South Dakota there is a limited area outside the moraine which is occupied with loess. We proceed to consider the drift underneath it.

At Vermilion there is a terrace which rises about 80 feet above the flood plain of the Missouri. The southern edge of this terrace extends nearly due east from this place to Brule Creek. The structure of the terrace is unusually well shown in cuts at Vermilion. The mass of it is composed of a pebbly clay, the upper portion of which is quite homogeneous and of a yellowish color. In this were noticed certain levels several feet apart, in which bowlders were more abundant. Below the pebble clay is less homogeneous, showing pockets of sand, some stratified obliquely. The prevalent color of the whole is blue. No exposures were found lower than 20 feet above the river. Wells in the town show gravel 125 to 160 feet below the surface. The upper surface of the pebble clay was evidently eroded before the mantle of loess which covers it was put on. This loess is not considered of the same age as the more extensive deposit, but is probably simply a deposit of silt in comparatively recent times. Upon this terrace are frequently found basins resembling those upon till. The upper plain of this terrace surface extends north to the moraine and east to Brule Creek at a very uniform level. The exposures along the Vermilion River indicate that the same general characters prevail throughout.

A study of the cuts along the railroad between Beresford and Calliope indicates that the drift here, instead of being gravelly, as in northern Nebraska, is for the most part clayey, the stony ingredients, including sand, forming perhaps less than 30 per cent. Between the

moraine and Brule Creek, in shallow cuts, yellow pebble clay and loess-like clay are interstratified, perhaps by wash from loess exposures above. In the cuts near the side of the long north-south valleys running into Brule Creek from the north the pebble clay below shows a washed surface, and sometimes a thin layer of gravel, while sand prevails in the end of the cut toward the valley. Everywhere at low levels (and there are no deep cuts very high above the bottom of the valleys) the correspondence of the drift with the present surface of the country is clearly seen. In the summit cut, between Alcester and Calliope, there are exposed loess and an irregular layer of reddish clay lying above the yellow pebble clay which in some places show 5 feet or more. A few small yellow sand pockets were observed with stratified gravel in their upper portions. This was at an altitude of 90 feet above Alcester. In a cut about 25 feet in depth 2 miles west of Calliope, on the south side of the valley of a small stream and about 100 feet above the Big Sioux, the pebble clay was exposed to such depth as to exhibit a decided bluish cast in its lower portion, although the upper 15 or 20 feet showed the usual yellowish appearance. As in the cuts near Vermilion, the yellow passes insensibly into the bluish pebble clay. Here the yellow banded seams, dividing the blue till into polyhedral masses, were finely shown. Another peculiar feature of the pebble clay in this cut was the existence of cracks which resemble immense mud cracks, descending 3 or 4 feet from the surface and widening above to 4 or 5 inches. These cracks were filled with a coarse yellow sand. With this exception no deposits of sand were found in the cut. Similar cracks were found to be more numerous in some of the cuts farther west. In this same cut the pebble clay was capped with loess, an eroded surface with several inches of gravel and occasional boulders separating them. Another feature was well shown in this cut which occurs not infrequently elsewhere, especially at lower levels in the till. These were patches of lead-colored clay, free from pebbles and resembling the Cretaceous clay in texture and color. These are often 2 or 3 feet thick and from 4 to 5 feet to a rod in width. The most rational explanation that has presented itself is that the core of the hill is of such clay, and that while the pebble clay was forming this became mixed, either en masse by the thrust of ice or by becoming plastic it flowed down on the already deposited drift. Different cases may have been formed in these different ways.

Near the Big Sioux west of Calliope the bottom of the drift, as marked by an exposure of travertine rock, is about 65 feet above the stream, while its top is 125 feet, and has the appearance of the edge of a terrace. Farther north, west of Eden, the top of the drift near the Big Sioux is about 160 feet above the Big Sioux. Along the Big Sioux north of Eden is a high terrace of stratified gravel about 65 feet above the Big Sioux, and in a slide just west the Tertiary (?) deposits, composed of lead-colored shale and sand, rise about 50 feet, above which

comes first about 4 feet of fine sand, then pebbles and boulders. The drift continues from that upward to 117 feet upon a spur extending from higher land farther west.

Along the Dakota side of the Big Sioux below Beloit, Iowa, pre-Glacial deposits are found finely exposed at several points. They are especially conspicuous where the stream has encroached upon the highland in close proximity to the moraine. Since the formation of the bowldery terrace which slopes down from the plain about Canton to the mouth of Rock River, the stream has found the pre-Glacial beds so easily corraded that it has slipped off from the terrace and cut down from 70 to 80 feet below it.

On or near sec. 18, T. 97, R. 48, the Big Sioux has encroached upon an unusually high bank on the south. About 250 feet above the stream is a terrace corresponding in height to the upland east of Beloit, but not so high by 50 feet as the till surface a mile or two west, which we consider a part of the moraine. The terrace is not fully exposed, and in some places the slidden bank makes the thickness of strata somewhat doubtful. Beginning at the top of this terrace, we have made out a section as follows:

Section on the Big Sioux River, $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles east of Fairview, South Dakota.

	Feet.
Loess.....	6-10
Till with irregular stratified sand strata toward the bottom. The lower 20 feet is blue and almost free from pebbles. Possibly equivalent to the pebbleless clay east of Canton and Sioux Falls	100-110
Fine sand with large rusty concretions of upper portions and a few fragments of large pearly shells (Unios?). This stratum is of undetermined thickness and is doubtless a source of the very copious springs along the base of the bluff farther east which deposit travertine.....	20
Unexposed. Probably much of it is a pebbleless clay of Cretaceous age....	110
Level of the Big Sioux, about 1,200 feet above the sea.	

Half a mile farther east is exposed 5 to 6 feet of black clay capped with a layer of shaly sandstone which passes below the water of the Big Sioux, forming slight rapids. This dark clay resembles closely the Benton clay as seen opposite Vermilion, but no fossils were found to decide the point. It is probably a rearrangement of this clay, or possibly a portion of the original deposit itself, which has been successfully used in making ornamental brick near Fairview.

There is little doubt that the clay and sand near Eden, South Dakota, and those shown in the cuts east of Canton, also north of Sioux City, belong to the same formation with those appearing in this section. The sand may be of very late Tertiary age.

Along the Big Sioux between the falls and Brandon the drift abounds in gravel and bowlderets, the latter being largely formed of red quartzite. From near the level of the bottom lands above the falls there extends a well-marked terrace down the river, sometimes upon one side of the river and sometimes upon the other. In its upper por-

tion it is composed of gravel, which is coarse above. Extensive exposures are found along the railroad. Its height above the river 2 miles west of Brandon, according to railroad levels, is about 80 feet. Near the northwest corner of T. 101, R. 49, are high hills, composed almost entirely of gravel, forming a ridge parallel with the stream and rising in their highest portion 210 feet above it and about 20 feet higher than the gentle slope which rises from it southward toward the moraine. In this the coarser material seems to be above. An exposure about 50 feet below the summit showed coarse plastering sand.

About the town of Sioux Falls are numerous exposures, some of which are shown in figs. 22-26. In general they show in higher places thin deposits of loess, as though deposited along the stream when flowing at higher altitudes. Below this, in some places, comes yellow pebble clay, usually with the washed surface. In one case a confused mass of bowlders is found at this horizon, in others a dark layer 1 to 3 feet, as though an old soil or mud bed formed in the stream. This is usually from 30 to 40 feet above the level of the Milwaukee station. In a few cases this seems to be overlain by yellow pebble clay instead of loess.

In the cuts northeast of Sioux Falls, along the line of the Illinois Central Railroad, there is an exposure of deposits similar to those noted east of Canton. They are as follows:

Section northeast of Sioux Falls, South Dakota.

	Feet.
Loose loess	5-6
Drab, checky yellowish clay. A few black siliceous pebbles, more numerous below, with some white pebbles and small bowlders of red quartzite.....	6-7
Dark soil-like clay, checked with white concretions of black pebbles, some of them trap and flat	3
Similar, but lighter, containing calcareous concretions and black pebbles. Coarser bowlders come in at the top horizontally. Three rotten granite bowlders were found, though there were many others which were solid	5
Gravel, with numerous bowlders in the upper portions.....	10-12
A drab plastic clay with few pebbles, weathering a creamy ocher (older till) ..	5-6

The top of the last stratum is very little higher than the Chicago and Northwestern station. The gravel stratum is quite variable in thickness, and the pebbly clay above shows a dark stratum of clay which has the thickness and general appearance of a soil, but in other cases is not present.

About Garretson and north for 2 or 3 miles is a small driftless area, which is of peculiar character. The bed rock is Sioux quartzite, much fissured, and traversed with channels which are 60 or more feet in depth. The Split Rock, the principal stream, seems not to have cut to the bottom of some of the old channels. Upon this rests a loess-like loam, in places passing into fine sand. Its thickness has not been determined, partly because it is not easily differentiated from the loess, which is probably of more recent date. In a careful examination of both sides of the Split Rock for $1\frac{1}{2}$ or 2 miles north of Garretson no

case of worn surface or northern erratics was found, except a very few scattered over the surface of the underlying rock, which may easily have washed from north of the area. This feature is in marked contrast with the surface of the rock a little west of the Palisades, where the loam is absent and the rock is worn and grooved by the action of the ice. The thickness of the pre-Glacial loam at Garretson has not been clearly determined, but a thin edge of clayey gravel is found overlapping the loam a little east of Garretson, and a stony deposit of northern sand and bowldery clay is observed upon the summit of several knobs which may be detached remnants of stream beds or bowldery terraces and which rise 125 or 150 feet above Garretson, which place is, by railroad level, 1,496 feet above the sea. The connection has not been traced, but it seems probable that this stony stratum corresponds with the bowldery layer at the bottom of the till east of Canton, and that it marks the level of the discharge of water along the east edge of the Dakota lobe at a time somewhat antedating the occupation of the outer moraine. If this, however, is correct, the difference in the level and the consequent rapid currents southward would account for the coarser material. This, it will be observed, would correspond to the earlier deposition of till east of Canton. A heavy gravel deposit east of Sioux Falls would correlate well with this same deposit.

In the loam capping the high terrace just east of the Big Sioux, above the falls and opposite the city of Sioux Falls, there were found in 1894 two tusks, three or four teeth, and fragments of bones of a large mammoth. The tusks were over 6 inches through at the base, and the portions remaining were over 7 feet long and much curved. This terrace rises to about 60 feet above the present stream, and was probably the flood plain of the river during the earlier occupation of the outer moraine. At a lower level large bones, supposed to be of a mastodon, were reported at an earlier date. Probably from the lower level also came the skull of a musk ox now in the museum of the University of South Dakota.

A few miles north of Clark, in Clark County, outside of the moraine, beds containing wood and fresh-water shells were struck, in digging wells, 25 to 30 feet below the surface. This is the only case which seems to correspond with the forest beds reported from eastern Iowa and Illinois, and these are not certainly known to be covered by till.

THE DRIFT IN IOWA.

In a section opposite Fairview drift was found to a height of 240 feet above the stream. The Big Sioux has there worn deeply into the highlands on the east side. An extensive slide, probably caused by a softening of the Cretaceous or Tertiary clays below, has exposed about 50 feet of pebble clay, the upper portion of which is yellow, the lower blue, exhibiting the selenite seams, with the yellow layers adjacent, like those shown in the cut west of Calliope and already described.

From a series of cuts between the Big Sioux east of Canton and Inwood, Iowa, as well as a careful study of slopes and reports from a few wells, we construct the following section:

Section on Big Sioux, east of Canton, Iowa.

	Feet.
Loess, with an undetermined thickness of till probably occupying the lower portion. From some reports as well as from the cuts it would appear that nearly or all of it was loess, but from the distribution of water and the reports of other well-diggers it seems that half or two-thirds of it is till..	90-100
Gravelly clay in places. This seems to be the same which is conspicuously developed as a shoulder along the hillsides next the Big Sioux farther west.	10-20
Pebbleless loamy clay which weathers a creamy yellow (older till?).....	50
A fine stratified sand without gravel, but no northern erratics. This sand probably corresponds to the sand west of Fairview. It is water bearing, furnishing a spring in a railroad cut.....	18-20
Unexposed, probably Cretaceous	60-75
Level of Big Sioux, 1,227 feet.	

East of Kruger's mill, back of a terrace about 50 feet in height, the drift appears on the south side of a small stream showing a section, beginning about 108 feet above the stream, as follows:

Section east of Kruger's mill.

	Feet.
Reddish pebbly clay with some sand	9-10
Stratified sand, with sheets of clay obliquely set, and from a half inch to 6 inches thick	24
Blue till with an irregular surface above	5-6

Higher than this section the slope shows pebbles to a height of 180 feet, where bowlders are more common. North of the small stream, along what appears to be a much-eroded terrace, bowlders and gravel occur to the height of 125 feet, above which there is 30 feet of loess.

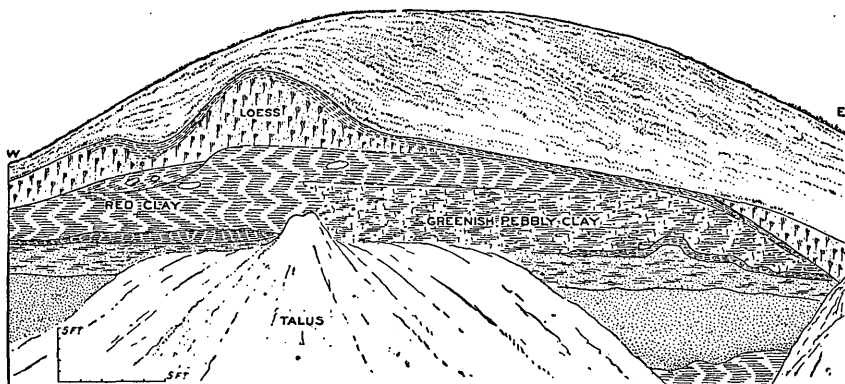


FIG. 19.—Sandpit section east of McCook, South Dakota.

Three or 4 miles west of Larchwood shallow wells show 5 to 10 feet of loess, below which comes yellow pebble clay or till. This seems to be the prevailing character of the upland region of Iowa throughout Lyon County.

Seven or 8 miles northwest of Sioux City, about St. Onge's place, as mentioned by Dr. White in his report, and not far from the ranch of D. H. Talbot, are several exposures showing the more recent deposits overlying the Cretaceous *Inoceramus* limestone beds, which form a conspicuous shoulder along the bluffs for many miles. The higher level of the Cretaceous is about 140 feet above the Big Sioux. Above this lies a bed of waxy yellow clay with irregular upper surface. It seems to be derived from the weathering of the limestone on which it rests. Above this is a bed of gray sand, coarser below. This has been sought for plastering purposes in Sioux City. A sketch of one exposure is shown in fig. 19. In no case have I seen more than 12 feet exposed, but it is probably much thicker farther back. The sand passes above into a greenish joint clay without pebbles. Upon this rests a thin layer of reddish till containing the usual northern erratics, and just above comes the loess. All the exposures studied indicate that the clays and loess have been let down and distorted by the escape of the sand from below. A generalized section would be as follows:

Generalized section near Sioux City, Iowa.

	Feet.
Loess.....	50
Reddish till	3-5
Greenish joint clay without pebbles.....	2-5
Gray sand, clayey above, coarser below	7-12
Yellow waxy clay.....	5-9
Cretaceous No. 3.....	140
Level of Big Sioux.	

About a mile northeast of the railroad bridge across the Big Sioux, near Riverside, are several sandpits. In one a large lenticular mass of till was found in the loess. This was described and figured in 1895.¹

One mile above Sioux City, between the summit of Dakota Point and the river, the following section may be found:

Section 1 mile above Sioux City, Iowa.

	Feet.
Slope.....	25
Loess, exposed, with several feet at base darkly covered with carbonaceous matter.....	150
Yellow till with an uneven surface above, reddish and loamy	55
Low water in the Missouri.	

About a mile farther up the river, at the base of the bluff, is an exposure of gravel about 60 yards in length and 15 to 20 feet in thickness. Its base is unexposed, but its upper surface, which is about 50 feet above the water in the Big Sioux, is a horizontal line, and the loess stratified below rests directly upon it. A remarkable feature in the gravel is the occurrence of three great bands of coarse gravel and cobblestones, alternating with finer material, which dip abruptly to the south through the whole height of the exposure. The dip above is about 18°, but gradually diminishes toward the base.

¹ Proc. Iowa Acad. Sci., Vol. II, pp. 20-23; also by H. F. Bain in Iowa Geol. Rept., Vol. V, p. 284.

A study of this locality, which is near Riverside Station, subsequent to extensive removal of the gravel revealed the following facts, some of them quite puzzling. At first view it seems a clear case of till between two beds of loess. The gravel shows a level surface for several rods, and at the south end it has been found to be at least 30 feet thick. At that depth water, probably on a level with the river, prevented further excavation. Above the gravel at the south end rises 50 to 75 feet of loess. In it were found a few shells of *Limnæa* and *Sphærium*, which have not been observed elsewhere in the loess of this region. The summit of the hill back rises about 130 feet above the river.

At the north end of the exposure and 100 yards from the last the section above the gravel is as follows:

Section near Riverside Station, Iowa.

	Feet.
Slope, loess.....	50
Loess, exposed.....	5-6
Reddish till, thinning and dropping to the south and running out in about 80 yards.....	18
Massive loess-like silt, containing <i>Succinea avara</i> , similar to those now living on the bluff back, blotched above with carbonaceous matter, with a few fragments of water plants (?).....	6
Upper surface of the gravel somewhat interstratified with the silt, and containing the same <i>Succinea</i> .	

Within a quarter of a mile farther north the top of the Cretaceous is evenly exposed about 80 feet above the river, and above it fine sand with pebbly clay above rising to 90 to 190 feet, the beds resembling those already noted near Talbot's. The most plausible explanation suggested at present is, therefore, that the gravel pit shows a comparatively recent formation in the base of a high terrace, possibly corresponding to that south of Sioux City.¹

At Missouri Valley, back of the brickyard, there is found the following section:

Section at Missouri Valley, Iowa.

	Feet.
Loess, exposed, with "charcoal streak" a few inches above the base pretty well developed for this region. This loess shows crevasses or slight cracks nearly vertical from top to bottom	90
Drift exposed mostly reddish clay, loamy above, more stony below, and passing into blue till below	40
Thirty feet above station.	

One to $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles north of Council Bluffs are found three great sand pits in the side of the bluffs. They are known from their owners' names as Lawlor's, Clark's, and Cassady's sand banks, naming them in order beginning with the most northern. At Clark's bank we find the most complete exposure, although some of the members are bet-

¹ Compare also an explanation in Proc. Iowa Acad. Sci. (1895), Vol. II, pp. 20, 23.

ter represented in the other banks. The section at Clark's bank is as follows:

Section at Clark's sand bank, 1 to 1½ miles north of Council Bluffs, Iowa.

	Fect.
Loess, exposed, which is sandy below	20
Dark clayey loam	3-4
Coarse sand, obliquely stratified in thick layers, with a layer of clay 6 to 8 inches in thickness, interpolated 12 to 15 feet from the bottom	40
Gravel	5
Blue till, white pebbles	8-10
Unexposed, but probably mostly till (level of the lake)	25

At Lawlor's the sand is slightly consolidated in its upper layers, forming a sandstone a few inches thick. A row of angular blocks of clay appears in the sand 12 to 15 feet above the base. The gravel is found 8 feet thick, obliquely stratified, with layers 8 to 12 inches in thickness. The blue clay appears as before.

At Cassady's bank, 2 or 3 miles north of Council Bluffs, Iowa, we have the following section:

Section at Cassady's sand bank, 1 to 1½ miles north of Council Bluffs, Iowa.

	Fect.	In.
Slope	80	0
Loess, exposed	20	0
Clayey loess, with concretions	3-4	0
Sandy loess	3-4	0
Coarse sand, suitable for plastering, found in eight or nine layers 3 to 10 feet thick, all obliquely stratified, dipping toward the south, excepting one or two	45	0
Fine wet clay, uniform in thickness	1	3
Rusty, coarse sand with cobblestones below; some of the layers consolidated	10-12	0

Below the last number a copious spring comes out, which, probably like many others, marks the upper surface of the till.

From 4 to 5 miles north of Pacific Junction, along the base of the bluffs, are some remarkable exposures showing the base of the blue till. This is seen to extend horizontally for a mile or more, being exposed very distinctly. In the principal exposure the following section is found:

Section 4 miles north of Pacific Junction, Iowa.

	Fect.
Loess	15
Yellow, reddish, and loamy pebble clay	15
Slope, indicating much rusty sand	55
Consolidated sand	½
Clayey gravel in patches, with fine yellowish sand, and strips of yellow and blue till intermingled with them	12-15
Typical blue till, with its base very even and horizontal	3-5
Joint clay without pebbles, of a dark brownish gray, passing below, in its thickest portion, into reddish clay with horizontal bands of rounded concretions from 4 to 6 inches in diameter; its lowest surface very uneven	11-17
Light gray, fine, stratified sand, containing small globular concretions	9-10
Level of Missouri bottom lands.	

About 2 miles north of Pacific Junction the following section is exposed:

Section 2 miles north of Pacific Junction, Iowa.

	Feet.
Brownish clay, passing up into soil.....	3
Light-colored sandy marl, passing into marl below, and with black and white concretions above.....	3
Layer of chalky concretions with black interior.....	$\frac{1}{2}$
Very fine sand, obliquely stratified, passing abruptly below into the next....	6
Coarse sand and small quartz pebbles	4

East of Pacific Junction, in a spur of the bluffs near Keg Creek, is a deep railroad cut with the following section:

Section near Keg Creek, Iowa.

	Feet.
Loess.....	50
Dark-reddish or chocolate-colored loam extending horizontally across the exposure	3-4
Yellow till, uneven above and with loess filling the depressions under the dark stratum, many chalky concretions above and large, irregular sand pockets below. Remains of a young mammoth was found in the base of the loess or top of till	20-25
Unexposed.....	4-5
Irregularly bedded limestone, Carboniferous.....	4

At the point of the bluff south of Pacific Junction 2 or 3 miles, at one of a series of copious springs, there is the following exposure of drift:

Exposure 2 miles south of Pacific Junction, Iowa.

	Feet.
Stratified gravel, somewhat consolidated	2-6
Dark blue till, resting directly upon the next.....	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1
Gray limestone, which is striated in a direction S. 15° E. (mag.); this is about 20 feet above the bottom land	2

One-half mile farther south and 60 feet above the bottom land is another glaciated surface, several yards in extent, upon a layer of compact blue limestone about a foot thick, resting upon clay. Striæ are found upon its surface having the following directions: The deeper ones S. 18° E. and S. 26° E. There are also some S. 54° E. and S. 52° E., very distinct, and still smaller ones S. 70° E. About a rod east of the first locality striæ were found S. 14° E. and S. 8° E. There are now only a few inches of rusty sand resting on this surface, with the loess above.

In southwestern Iowa numerous exposures have been examined along the various railroads. It seems unnecessary to enter into details, but better to give only a general statement. As a rule, the loess shows four or five clayey layers, from a foot to a foot and a half in thickness at its base, with frequent traces of carbonaceous matter in its lower portion. Underneath this appears the red clay, first without and then with pebbles, passing below into till, which in some cases, as near Clarinda, is 40 feet or more thick.

The junction of the loess appears as a rule only in the higher cuts upon the summits separating the principal streams flowing into the Missouri. Lower cuts, which are the most common, present an eroded surface of till upon which the loess rests, with the red clay occasionally appearing between. Usually the surface of the drift is approximately parallel to the present surface of the country, its convexity usually being less. The till presents the same features which have been noticed elsewhere.

ELEVATIONS OF SURFACE OF DRIFT IN LOESS REGION.

These elevations, from the nature of the case, are less definite than some which have been given. For the most part they are of points where the loess and drift show their original relation to each other. They are in every case barometric. Those showing old soil or charcoal streaks are marked with an asterisk *); eroded surface under deep loess with an obelisk (†).

Elevations of surface of drift in loess region.

Locality.	Elevation above the Missouri.	Elevation above the sea.
	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
South of Niobrara.....	425-460	1, 645-1, 680
Devils Nest.....	450-475	1, 650-1, 680
° East of Creighton.....	470	1, 690
East of Osmond.....	(†)	1, 700-1, 760
East of Norfolk.....	415	1, 620
Twelve miles north of Northside.....	415	1, 620
Clarkson.....	530†	1, 560
Five miles northwest of Schuyler.....	560	1, 572
Near Linwood.....	390	1, 400
Bone Creek, east of David City.....	510	1, 595
Germantown.....	575	1, 530
East of Milford.....	500	1, 450
Berks.....	530-555	1, 450-1, 475
Eight miles southwest of Milford.....	555-580	1, 475-1, 500
South of Pleasant Hill.....	560	1, 475
Four miles southeast of Yankton.....	255	1, 440
South of St. Helena.....	150	1, 320
Five miles northwest of Hartington.....	385	1, 555
Five miles southwest of Hartington.....	450	1, 610
West of Coleridge.....	590?	1, 710?
Northeast of Emerson.....	260?	1, 360?
Five miles northwest of West Point.....	380*	1, 426
Southeast of Timberville.....	330*	1, 340
Southwest of Fremont.....	270*	1, 280

Elevations of surface of drift in loess region—Continued.

Locality.	Elevation above the Missouri.	Elevation above the sea.
	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Cheney	475	1,400
Bennett	400	1,320
West of Syracuse	205	1,125
East of Syracuse	255	1,175
West of Larchwood, Iowa	225?	1,465?
West of Inwood, Iowa	235	1,450
East of Fairview, South Dakota	245	1,450
West of Eden	220?	1,400
East of Hawarden, Iowa	270	1,370
Opposite Vermilion, South Dakota	350	1,450
Seven miles northwest of Sioux City	175	1,280
Riverside Park, near Sioux City	95	1,200
Northwest of Tekamah, Nebraska	290	1310
Blair, Nebraska	190	1200
About 4 miles northwest of Florence	140*	1130
One mile north of Florence	75	1165
North of Council Bluffs, Iowa	75	1065
At Council Bluffs	70	1055
Five miles north of Pacific Junction	150	1110*
West of Silver City	170	1160
East of Pacific Junction	50*	1000
South of Pacific Junction	100	1065
West of Plattsmouth Bridge	100*	1055
East of Sanborn		1550
East of Marcus		1560
Northwest of Manilla		1475
West of Minden	225	1230
East of Minden	225	1230
West of Marne	335*	1350
West of Malvern	200	1150
Southeast of Malvern	125*	1075
West of Red Oak	185	1140
West of Valisca	275	1230
Southwest of Shenandoah	240	1154
East of Shenandoah (Page Center)	345	1265
East of Clarinda (New Market)	380*	1320

The elevations given from Iowa are mostly taken from the summits between important streams. The junction of the red clay and loess often lies considerably lower in the cuts adjacent to these.

RELATIONS OF DRIFT TO LOESS.

The relations of the drift to the loess vary in different localities. Prof. N. H. Winchell in his annual report for 1877 published observations indicating the gradual passage of loess into till in the southwestern part of Rock County, Minnesota. This would nearly correspond to what the writer has elsewhere described in sections where the till and loess are connected through the medium of the red clay. Where the upper surface of the latter is rendered indistinct by the absence of the "old soil" and the loamy and pebbleless character of the red clay the statement of Professor Winchell would be exactly realized. Such have been frequently found by the writer in southwestern Iowa, especially where deposits have been somewhat disintegrated by weathering or leaching. Nevertheless, that the normal relation, at least in the central portion of the region, is one of distinct division between the red clay and loess seems borne out by observations which have been recorded above. As has been found in numerous localities, the drift often has a very distinctly eroded surface, which is marked by its unevenness and by the presence upon it of an unusual number of pebbles and bowlders. This washed surface, so far as has been observed, is confined to lower elevations; in southwestern Iowa to within 100 feet above the present streams. It is uniformly found in cuts where the railroad passes through the spurs running into a valley. The surface of the drift is convex, but in less degree than that of the loess above. Another interesting relation is found in the cuts adjoining the more important streams. In such cases the drift loses, in a measure, its parallelism with the present surface or with that of the loess, and its culmination in any cut is usually toward the more important stream, as would naturally follow from the greater erosion of the loess on that side. This is found to hold true provided the important stream rises within the loess area.

THE "OLD SOIL" AND THE CHARCOAL STREAK.

Numerous references have been made to the carbonaceous matter between the loess and red clay. Where the deposits are well preserved at the junctions of these formations there is rarely an absence of carbonaceous matter. It is sometimes in the form of driftwood scattered in the clay, as in cuts southeast of Malvern, at West Point, and southeast of Timberville, Nebraska. More frequently it has the appearance of a dusky shading of the clay, usually for 3 or 4 feet just above the base of the loess. This is frequently true where the driftwood is found. The term "old soil" is properly applied to such exposures. Its color may often be well described as chocolate, though it is sometimes more like that of black loam. The carbonaceous matter is sometimes found in wavy streaks scattered through the clay, as though sparingly deposited with the embedding of the material. Angular fragments of charcoal are distributed in the same deposit, usually very sparsely, but sometimes in pockets. These fragments are generally quite minute, but

in one case they were found nearly half an inch through and apparently from sticks 6 inches in diameter. That these fragments are of charcoal rather than of rotten wood is indicated, although not proved, by their angular character, and the fact that at this same horizon wood is found well preserved. From the presence of the charcoal this has been named the charcoal streak.

The old soil and charcoal streak are found only where the surface of the drift is not eroded. In using the term "old soil" the writer would

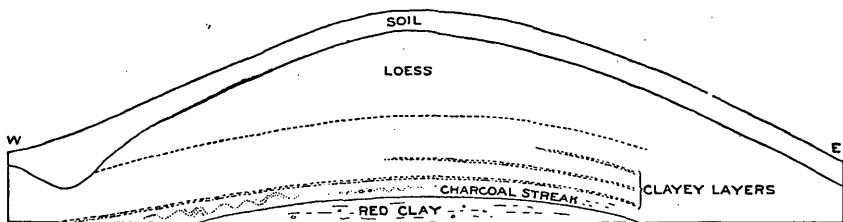


FIG. 20.—Summit cut between Silver and Keg creeks.

not assume that such is its real character. No unmistakable evidence of plants growing in position has been found in it. Although some of the fragments apparently are from roots, examination has not shown them to be in their natural position, while in other localities, as at Malvern, Iowa, the fragments have a slivered and worn appearance, as if they had been transported.

Another question arising at this point is whether this stratum is more closely connected with the loess or with the red clay. Usually the material and structure of the deposit aside from the carbonaceous matter are hardly distinguishable from the loess. Moreover, often the

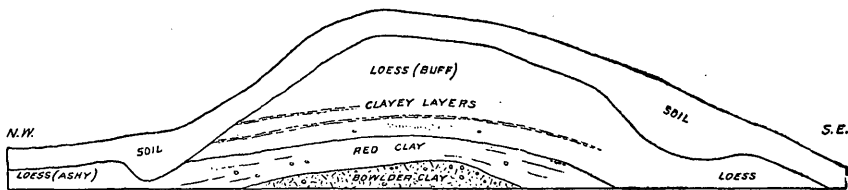


FIG. 21.—Cut on Omaha and St. Louis Railroad west of Walnut Creek, Mills County, Iowa.

junction between it and the red clay is distinctly marked, while on the other hand, although its color ends quite abruptly upward, the body of the deposit seems continuous with the loess. We conclude, therefore, that in most cases, at least in this region, the formation is a deposit of carbonaceous mud. In some localities, especially the more elevated and those toward the western margin of the region, it may prove to be real soil. Figs. 20 and 21 illustrate some of the points mentioned above.

SUMMARY.

The drift in this region is represented by three members—till, red clay, and gravel and sand beds.

The first is confined mainly, if not exclusively, to a belt along the

Big Sioux and Missouri from 30 to 50 miles wide in the northern portion, but rapidly widening below Dakota City, so that in the latitude of Lincoln it reaches from the Big Blue west of the Missouri to at least an equal distance east of that river. The second is found everywhere except where its absence can be referred to erosion. In its pebbleless form it continues westward indefinitely underneath the "old soil." The third is most extensively developed in Knox and Cedar counties, Nebraska, at a high level; but similar deposits are found near the present channels of the Big Sioux and Missouri at much lower levels, especially southward.

As to elevation, the first is mainly confined to medium and lower levels. The second is found at all levels, though more removed by erosion at lower levels. The third occurs at higher and lower levels less frequently than at medium elevations.

The drift, as was long ago recorded by Dr. C. A. White, is less prominently developed near the Missouri.

The base of the drift is found where the blue till is wanting, as in northern Nebraska, and in the lowest levels along the Missouri River in the southern part of the region under consideration; also at other locations throughout this region where older rocks protrude to unusual height. In other circumstances it is not found.

The drift of the region, so far as has been observed, contains no erratics of local origin except within 5 or 6 feet of the original beds.

Striae are of exceptional occurrence even in localities where they are found. Disturbance of underlying beds has been very rarely observed, and where observed it is of inconsiderable amount.

LOESS.

We proceed to consider the loess, which covers this region as a mantle and, with superabundant folds, spreads farther west and south. In our discussion of its characteristics we shall find it convenient to transcend the bounds of the drift as before laid down.

By the term loess we would designate, in the present case, not simply the kind of deposit, but only the deposits of this kind which were made contemporaneously with its principal development in this region. The silt capping of the high terraces before mentioned and the bulk of some of the more recent terraces are physically indistinguishable from the true loess. The same is true of an older deposit described elsewhere.

Structure and composition of the loess.—The loess has been so often defined that a detailed description is unnecessary. It is composed mainly of fine grains of silica, some of which attain the size of 0.2 of a millimeter, though much the greater number of particles are less than 0.01 of a millimeter. These particles are coated, more or less, with oxide of iron and calcium carbonate. The amount of the former gives it its color, which in the typical form is usually a light buff. With it are

mixed many small grains of clay. The finer ingredients appear to constitute a cement which holds it firmly together, so that it usually stands firm like indurated rock, unless softened by moisture. In the latter case it has a very slow, creeping movement on slope. It is often traversed by vertical fissures, which in some cases may be compared with crevasses in glaciers. In some localities the grains of silica are rather angular, even the largest, but more commonly, so far as observation goes, the larger grains are more or less rounded, sometimes worn smooth, and the smaller grains, though relatively less worn, are apparently as much so as could be expected from their diminutive size and the consequent feebleness of their impact during transportation.

Though remarkably homogeneous, it still shows variations in color, which are often quite conspicuous when seen over extensive exposures. Its usual color is a dull yellow, but it is not infrequently of a light ashy hue, with a bluish cast when permeated with moisture. The distribution of these colors forms one of the most reliable evidences of its stratified character. In the extensive excavations recently carried on near Council Bluffs, Iowa, an obviously darker band could be seen when viewed from a distance, marking a horizontal line for half a mile or more. This was some 75 or 80 feet above the bottom lands of the Missouri. Similar horizontal bands have been traced in cuts of higher elevation and more remote from the Missouri. This obscure stratification has also been found in some cuts to show a curved arrangement corresponding to the surfaces above and below. The ashy appearance in other cases seems to be a result of more recent leaching of the loess by carbonaceous waters. In this way may be explained the frequent occurrence of ashy loess near the ends of cuts.

Extent of the loess.—The boundary of the loess on the west is very indefinitely determined, and must necessarily remain so for several reasons: (1) The obscuring of the limit by the encroachment of the sand from the west, under the influence of the wind; (2) the possible passing of loess into this sandy deposit on the west; (3) the close resemblance of the loess to residuary loams and to lacustrine and fluvial deposits of a different epoch. In general it may be said to extend along the Elkhorn, Platte, and Republican rivers indefinitely westward, while over the areas between it extends not nearly so far. As observed near Friend and Dorchester, Nebraska, the prevalent deposit is not the typical loess, but is much more clayey, and the yellowish tint is replaced by a reddish, so that it resembles a deposit found elsewhere beneath the loess. Whether this deposit is really a clayey equivalent of the loess or whether it is of older formation has not been determined. It has been observed by the writer near Norfolk and thence down the Elkhorn to its mouth; also up the Loup River as far as Scotia, and along the Platte as far as Plum Creek, and deep deposits of it are reported from the vicinity of the North Platte. It abounds, according to Professor Aughey, along the Republican.

The eastern edge of the loess is difficult to determine because the deposit is fragmentary and is deeply covered with soil closely resembling that of weathered drift. The presence of pebbles is usually, though not always, decisive proof of underlying drift, but much of the drift seems covered with a soil in which pebbles are scarce. The eastern boundary of the loess is described by Dr. White in his report upon the geology of Iowa, Vol. I, page 109, viz:

Commencing at the southeastern corner of Fremont County, follow up the watershed between the East Nishnabotany and West Tarkio rivers to the southern boundary of Cass County, thence to the center of Audubon County, thence to Tiptop (Arcadia) Station on the Chicago and Northwestern Railway, thence by a broad curve westward to the northwest corner of Plymouth County. The last-named point is probably very near the most northerly point to which the deposit reaches, certainly the most northerly one to which it reaches in Iowa.

Further investigation has shown the last statement to be an error. Moreover, the loess continues east of the limit named, becoming of lighter color, coarser texture, and less homogenous, passing in the Des Moines Valley into the second till of McGee.

According to Prof. N. H. Winchell, of the Minnesota survey, it rises to the 1,550-foot contour line in Rock and Nobles counties, Minnesota, or geographically it extends nearly to the southwest quarter of the former county and the southwest township of the latter, with a narrow area along the south boundary of the former county connecting them. In Iowa it is found covering most of the surface of Lyon and Sioux counties. This continues the boundary from the point last named by Dr. White more than 50 miles farther north.

The general statement given in the above quotation is correct, but additions may be made to it as follows: While the eastern edge in Lyon, Sioux, and Cherokee counties is ill defined, in Sac County it follows the watershed, and in Carroll and Guthrie counties the loess terminates in a thick, abrupt edge overlooking the valley of the Middle Raccoon in a way similar to that in which it overlooks the drift region west of the Big Sioux in Lincoln County, South Dakota, from the high bluffs east of the same stream. This feature was first described by Prof. O. St. John in the Iowa reports. It is well shown by figs. 23 and 24 (pp. 101, 102), taken from the same. It will be remembered that a similar relation existed along its northern edge in northern Nebraska and in northwestern Iowa.

In Adams County and adjacent counties in southwestern Iowa the loess extends up the valleys of the principal streams, while the drift occupies the higher country.

Southward the boundary of the loess has not been well determined. It certainly preserves its typical features and undoubted character along the immediate valley of the Missouri to Kansas City and beyond. Several of the Missouri geologists have recognized it in the surface clays covering most of the counties of that State north of the Missouri River.

Fossils in the loess.—Land and fresh-water shells belonging to recent species are found in great abundance in certain localities of the loess. They belong mostly to terrestrial species, but a few are distinctly aquatic. These fossils have not been noticed in northern Nebraska near the moraine, but mostly in southwestern Iowa and central Nebraska. Fragments of unios have been reported from northwestern Iowa, but they seem likely to have been derived from the graves of Indians, by whom they were used as ornaments. They may have been scattered also around camps where they were eaten. In the loess bluffs near the Missouri in southwestern Iowa patches of ash-colored loess are found connected with faint impressions, which seem to be traces of pieces of bark and driftwood, but such can not be positively stated. Some of the horizontal streaks and bands of ashy loess may mark the former deposition of vegetable matter which by its decay in its porous surroundings has reduced the sesquioxide of iron, which gives the yellow tinge to the loess, to a carbonate which has been removed. In several localities detached bones and teeth have been found 20 feet or more below the surface; but as a whole the loess is a remarkably barren deposit.

In some localities certain horizons in the loess are very rich in fossil shells over considerable areas. At Missouri Valley, Iowa, 3 or 4 feet above the horizontal junction of the loess with the red clay, numerous specimens of *Helix alternata* and *Succinea obliqua* are found with more common smaller species. The exposures exhibiting these are along the bluffs facing the valley west.

At Council Bluffs a horizon of similar shells occurs 4 or 5 feet above a dark layer resembling what has been called elsewhere the "old soil," but in this case it is found far above the base of the loess, at least 40 feet, and how much more can not be stated, as the drift is not exposed at that point.¹

Concretions in the loess.—These have been well described by Professor Call,² as well as by others earlier. A few notes concerning their distribution may be added. They abound at certain levels, within 100 feet above the present bottom lands of the Missouri, in great profusion. They are occasionally found in horizontal bands, suggesting their formation along an ancient water level. Sometimes, however, especially in greater altitudes, they appear in curved lines approximately parallel with the present surface. Such a case suggests their correspondence with the upper surface of a portion of the loess which at one time was water-soaked. Their frequent association with holes formed by roots suggests further the idea that they have been formed by the reduction of the dissolved bicarbonate of lime to the carbonate by evaporation.

¹ For further and more complete statements regarding the loess fossils of this region, see S. Aughey, Hayden's annual report for 1874, pp. 266-269; R. E. Call, *Am. Nat.*, 1882, p. 380; F. B. Meek, *Geol. of Missouri*, vol. 2, p. 215 (this does not exclude fossils from the alluvium); J. E. Todd, *Proc. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci.*, vol. 27, p. 235. B. Shimek, *Proc. Iowa Acad. Sci.*, vol. 5, p. 32.

² A paper published in *The American Naturalist*, May, 1882.

Such an explanation will not, however, explain the curiously cracked interior of the concretions. Although their calcareous character is so prominent, a little examination shows that they are largely composed of such siliceous grains as constitute the bulk of the loess. That they were not first masses of calcareous mud, perfected by concretionary action, seems evident from their position, which is usually with the longer axis vertical. Their cracked interior, rather than the result of its shrinking, as has been frequently suggested, is more probably produced by the expansion of the exterior by the building in of fresh particles from time to time between those already deposited. The age of these concretions may not be very great, for they are frequently observed in loess which has been recently rearranged.

Besides the calcareous concretions which have been considered thus far there are frequently found concretions of iron oxide. These are formed universally around decayed roots or root marks, and are sometimes elongated so as to resemble lead pencils in size and shape. Usually in their axis is an opening formerly occupied by a root.

Origin of the loess.—In comparing the loess with the extensive Cretaceous clays exposed along the Upper Missouri, and evidently forming much of the floor upon which the drift sheet of Dakota rests, one is struck with the abundance of silica in the former and the almost entire absence of it in the latter. Hence the idea that the loess is mainly the product of the grinding of the glaciers, at least so far as the Dakota lobe is concerned, seems to be erroneous. If, however, we turn to the Tertiary deposits of the plains west, we discover vast beds of very similar loams, in both the Loup Fork and the Laramie formations. There is underneath the prevailing greenish quartzite, which here and there caps the table-lands along the Ponca Reach, a deposit 10 to 20 feet thick scarcely distinguishable from the loess. Trace of apparently the same formation is mentioned by Prof. N. H. Winchell in his report on the Ludlow expedition, as found along the Cannonball.¹ It seems probable, therefore, that much of the loess material was derived from the western tributaries of the Missouri and not exclusively from the beds stirred up by the Dakota glaciers, and yet there is a probability that these sandy beds may have formerly extended into the James Valley, and so may have contributed to the loess through the instrumentality of the ice sheet. The calcareous and alkaline ingredients of the loess, on the other hand, were probably derived from the alkaline clays and chalk beds in southern South Dakota. These have given it some of its cementing constituents, which are the cause of some of its most peculiar physical properties.

Thickness of the loess.—The regularity in both the upper and the lower surfaces of the loess before mentioned is likely to mislead one in estimating its thickness. Several writers have apparently taken the distance from the summit of a hill to the highest exposure of the drift

¹ See report of Captain Ludlow's reconnaissance of the Black Hills, 1874, p. 23.

underneath this as the thickness of the loess. This may result in magnifying it two or three fold. In northwestern Iowa the railroad cuts rarely show a thickness of more than 15 feet, and more frequently less than 10 feet, and it lies from 150 to 250 feet above the Big Sioux. In southeastern South Dakota it is found in a very similar position.

In Fremont County, Iowa, its thickness, as shown by wells, is from 150 feet at a very few points near the Missouri to 40 or 50 feet near the Nishnabotany. It becomes very thin between the Nishnabotany and the Nodaway, in Page County. In southwestern Iowa it occurs down nearly to the level of the present flood plain of the Missouri. But usually in such cases there are signs of rearrangement—it has either slipped bodily from a higher position or has washed down, or else forms portion of a terrace of the Missouri at a lower level.

In northern Nebraska its thickness, so far as can be determined, is rarely over 100 feet in Knox County, and is more frequently less than 50 feet, but it is elevated from 400 to 550 feet above the Missouri. In Dixon County, opposite Vermilion, the loess extends from an altitude of 125 feet above the river to 300 feet, and farther back probably to 350 or 400 feet. It is not unlikely, however, that its base rises even more, so that its greatest thickness is near the river, where it attains, perhaps, 150 feet. At Ponca it is nearly the same, with its base about 75 feet above the river.

The lower surface of the loess rests upon the drift, and the relief of the surface of the latter may be inferred from its altitudes, which were given on a previous page. In most cases, toward the central portions of the region the base of the loess is a nearly horizontal plane, and here we usually find its greatest thickness. Near Florence its base is 75 feet above the Missouri, and it is estimated to be 100 feet in thickness. At Council Bluffs it is probably over 200 feet, but a continuous section of more than 100 feet has not been exposed at any one point. Judging from the external appearance of the bluffs along the Missouri, a similar thickness is attained at several other points from Sioux City southward.

The circumstances of the deposition of the loess and its age will be postponed until we have considered more fully its relations to the moraine and terraces of the principal streams. We now proceed to consider more in detail the features of the loess region adjoining the moraine.

Relation of the loess to the outer moraine.—Beginning near the mouth of the Bazile, the northern boundary of the loess extends nearly parallel with the Missouri, at a distance of 3 or 4 miles from it, to near sec. 8, T. 32 N., R. 3 W. At that point it turns abruptly southward to the southern end of the township and describes a broad semicircle, terminating at its eastern extremity in a high hill, about 6 miles west of St. Helena. From this point to Ponca it follows quite closely along the right bank of the Missouri, receding only near the more important

valley of the Bow. This whole margin has more or less of a dentate character, the projections being high, narrow, and usually extending toward the northwest. The drainage of the loess from this edge west of St. Helena is southward without exception. This would indicate that in its earlier condition, if not at present, its northern edge was the highest portion. From this margin, especially from the vicinity of Santee Agency to St. Helena, the country descends abruptly from 100 to 200 feet down to the Cretaceous clays, which occupy almost the whole surface between this line and the river, the only exception being where drift gravels extend northward from underneath the loess, as has been

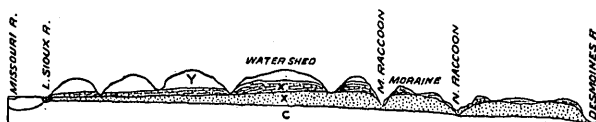


FIG. 22.—Section from Boonsboro, Iowa, to the Missouri.

described in connection with the drift. The very striking features of this northern edge of the loess are seen in Pl. XIV.

The altitude of the highest points is about 550 feet above the river. The thickness of the loess there varies from 30 to 100 feet. The eroded surface of the drift below was found at only one point, but so distinctly as to leave no doubt as to the fact. The branches of Bazile and Bow creeks have in many cases worn down into the underlying drift. But over much of the loess region one may travel for miles without finding a pebble. In Dickson and Dakota counties the loess covers the drift very perfectly, no pebbles being found even along streams that are eroded 200 or 300 feet below the general level. The loess in Lyon

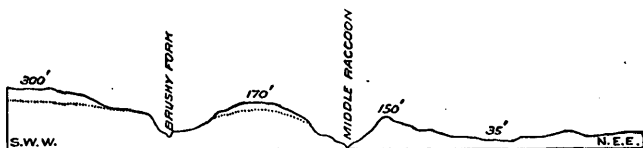


FIG. 23.—Section near south line of Carroll County, Iowa.

County, Iowa, sustains a very similar relation to the Big Sioux to that which it has to the Missouri in northern Nebraska, but its edge is less elevated and somewhat less abrupt. Instead of being 550 feet above the stream it is not more than 250 feet.

Professors White and St. John noted a similar relation in central Iowa¹. Figs. 22, 23, and 24 represent their conclusions.

In the southern part of Lincoln County and the northern part of Union County, South Dakota, the inner edge of the loess is very different from the points already described. Along the lower course of Brule Creek east of Vermilion Gap the loess occupies the hills on the east side, but as the moraine begins to appear on the western side it also

¹ See White's Iowa Report, Vol. I, p. 114; Vol. II, pp. 6, 98, 143.

appears on the west side of the creek and is spread out in shallow beds in an irregular manner upon its outer slope. Where the moraine consists of a few small hills about 9 miles east of Spirit Mound and just west of Brule Creek the inner range, rising 75 feet above the plain west, is very bowldery. The second range, about half a mile east, which rises 30 feet higher, has every appearance of being covered all over its summit with loess. No erratics were found, and badger holes showed only loess with calcareous concretions.

Southwest of Beresford, in the shallow cuts along the railroad, another opportunity was afforded to study this point. In the first cuts nothing



FIG. 24.—Section near junction of Middle Raccoon River and Willow Creek, Iowa.

but pebbly clay or disintegrated yellow till was seen below the soil, but about 30 feet below and about a mile distant from that town, which is upon the summit of the moraine, the loess begins to appear. In the first case it was in a portion of the cut covered with several feet of pebbly loam, which may be explained as a wash from the hillside west. A little farther east and 40 feet lower it showed its typical character, and began to cover the hills gradually toward the east. In Lyon County,

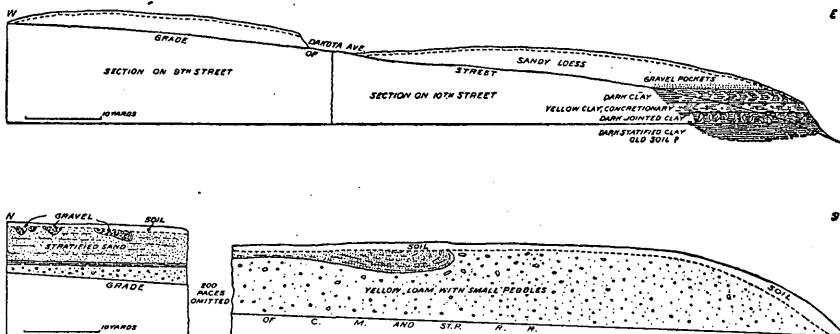
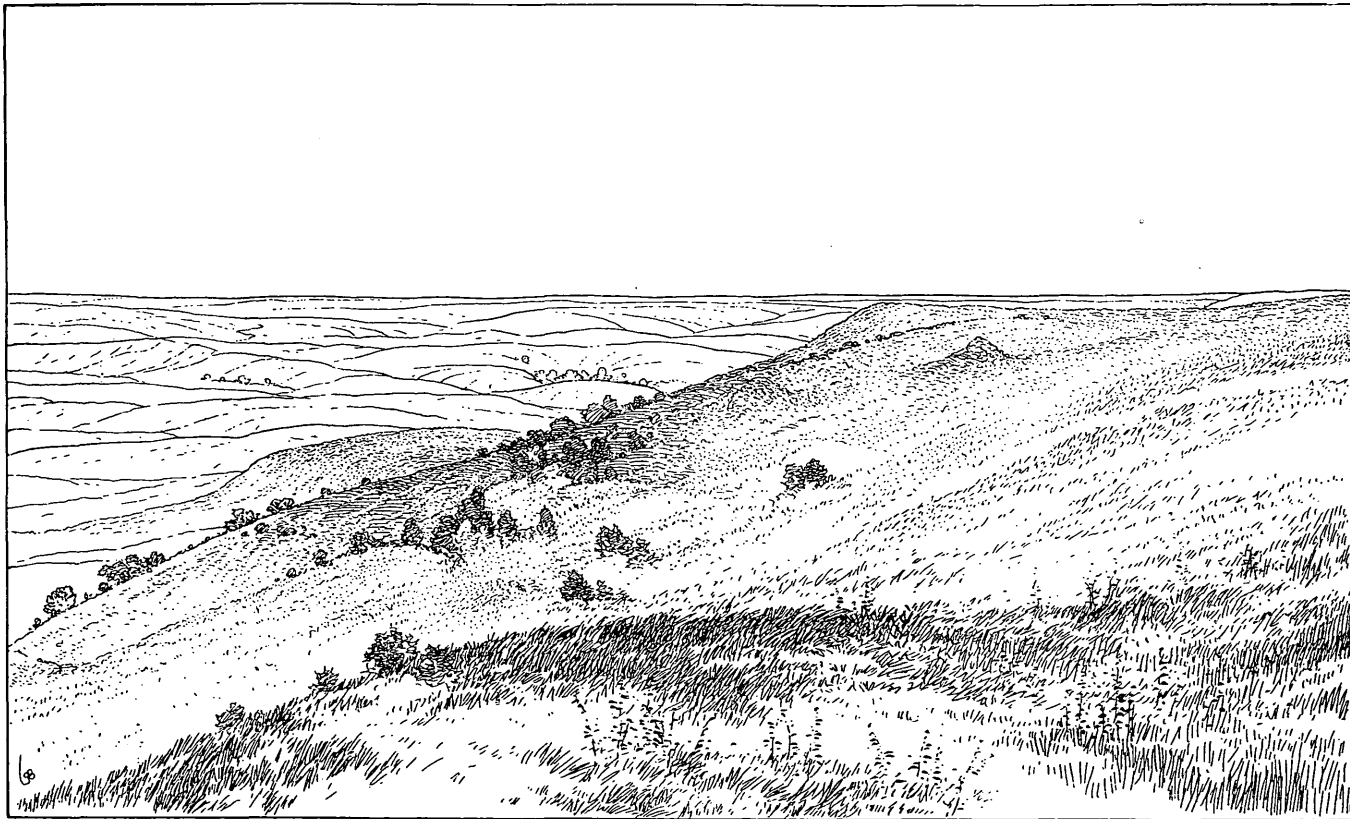


FIG. 25.—Sections at Sioux Falls, South Dakota.

Iowa, and Rock County, Minnesota, the drainage, as in northern Nebraska, is generally southward from the inner edge of the loess.

About Sioux Falls the loess occupies the hills in the bend of the Big Sioux. Underneath it lies darker clay, perhaps an old soil, below which are beds of pebble clay. When the loess was deposited the falls could not have been in existence. Some of the characteristic features may be seen from the sections shown in figs. 25 and 26. It is found rising



EASTWARD VIEW FROM NORTH EDGE OF THE LOESS SOUTH OF HERRICK, NEBRASKA.

about 75 feet above the Milwaukee station, or to an altitude of 1,455 feet above the sea, and is here again close to the exterior of the moraine. This, though arrived at quite independently, corresponds well with its

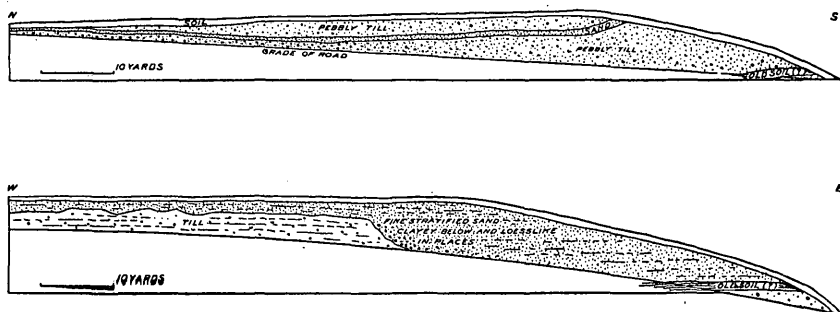


FIG. 26.—Sections at Sioux Falls, South Dakota.

altitude east of Beresford and at Warren, Iowa, and with the reports of Prof. N. H. Winchell respecting southeastern Minnesota.

COTEAU DES PRAIRIES REGION.

This region in some sense may be called the counterpart of the Red Lake region. It lies nearly in the same latitude, occupies an external angle of the moraine, and its features suggest lacustrine origin.

Boundaries of the Coteau region.—The line of separation between this and the moraine on the west may be located as follows: From the vicinity of Brookings southwest to Madison, thence southeast to Hartford and the mouth of Skunk Creek, thence northeast along the north bend of the Big Sioux and east to Luverne, thence north to Pipestone, thence north and northwest to the vicinity of Brookings. The northwest boundary corresponds well with the northeast course of Battle Creek, the southwest boundary, in general, with the west side of Skunk Creek Valley, the eastern boundary with more prominent outcrops of the Sioux quartzite.

Surface of the Coteau region.—The surface may be described in general as a plain lying between the east side of the Dakota loop and the west side of the Minnesota loop of the outer moraine. This plain slopes toward the south at the rate of 4 or 5 feet per mile. Where crossed by the railroad between Pipestone and Madison its altitude is very uniformly 1,690 feet above the sea. Where it is crossed in its southern portion the altitude is from 1,460 feet north of Valley Springs on its eastern side to 1,575 feet on its western side near Hartford. The general elevation there can not be so accurately given because the plain has been very much eroded. As will be seen from the map, its southern portion is much traversed by streams, which have by their numerous branches quite destroyed the surface of the original plain, especially toward the southeast. On the other hand, the northern portion of the

plain, aside from the larger valleys and ancient channels, rarely shows variation of surface of more than 10 or 15 feet. Ponds and shallow basins are found upon this plain in the vicinity of the moraine. More especially is this true west of Skunk Creek and northeast of Madison. On the margin of the plain northwest of Pipestone, as it approaches the moraine, a few broad swells appear. Along the Split Rock are bouldery knolls, which rise above (?) the general surface from 25 to 50 feet. The surface of the plain, where most even, is covered with a thin deposit of silt indistinguishable from loess. This was distinctly observed southeast of Flandreau. It can scarcely be said to be general, however.

Northwest of Flandreau and Egan, lying in the great bend of the Big Sioux, is a plain lower and more even in surface than the one already described. It was traversed from the vicinity of Medary to Egan. Its western boundary has not been definitely determined, but must lie several miles west of that course. When this region was examined the atmosphere was so smoky as to prevent a determination of this point. It is possible that no distinct edge will be found, and that the plain gradually rises to the level of the one farther west—i. e., the general surface of the region. The surface of this lower plain is covered with silt, shows very few boulders, and only a few quite shallow basins. Shallow sags also lead off into the short ravines running into the Big Sioux. The general surface is very even, and does not show elevations more than about 5 feet in height. Along the valley of the Sioux southward the hills are much lower than farther back, and probably may, many of them, be found to correspond in structure as well as altitude to this lower plain. In a trip southwest from Dell Rapids the highest hills east of Skunk Creek are 1,590 feet in elevation, while west of Skunk Creek the general surface of the country rises abruptly to the higher plain at 1,675 feet above the sea.

Valleys of the Coteau region.—The valleys may be divided into those which are now occupied by streams, which we may call recent valleys, and those which are not so occupied, which may be characterized as ancient channels. They are so related to one another, however, that we shall treat them together. The principal streams of the region are, first, the Big Sioux, then its three principal tributaries, Battle, Skunk, and Split Rock creeks, and two smaller though scarcely less important ones—Flandreau Creek, which lies in an old outlet channel, connected with Lake Benton in the Minnesota moraine, and Deer Creek, leading from another outlet in the same moraine. Both have large valleys, broad, flat bottomed, and with abrupt sides.

Battle Creek rises inside of the moraine, in Badus Lake, and first flows southeast through a broad valley, but after passing through the moraine turns sharply to the northeast. Its valley outside of the moraine is broad and marshy, and, especially its eastern bank, is quite low, about 40 feet below the plain north at the bend. Its lower course

is occupied by open lakes. Leading southeast from near the bend in Battle Creek, and in line with its upper course, is a remarkable ancient channel, crossing the railroad a little west of Coleman. North of Wentworth it is occupied by a shallow lake 3 or 4 miles in length, which we will call Lake Wentworth. Farther east it becomes marshy, and the lower portion of this channel is occupied by a small branch of the Big Sioux. This channel, from its position, seems likely to have been once occupied by the stream which flowed through the gap in the moraine to the northwest and which later, turning northeast, began the valley of Battle Creek. Herman, Madison, Brant, and Skunk Creek lakes occupy a very remarkable valley. The first of these lakes lies surrounded by the moraine. There are numerous channels from the slopes of the moraine leading into it, some from the south, but the more important, which are now occupied by copious streams, from the west and north. The lake is a beautiful sheet of water, of somewhat crescent shape, and surrounded with quite abrupt hills. The peninsula from its eastern end is covered with trees. Leading east from this lake is a system of channels, of which there are two principal ones. One leads east and southeast from the north portion of Lake Herman to Lake Madison, thence southeast along the course of that lake and Brant Lake, gradually running out beyond. In this valley flows the stream which connects Lakes Herman and Madison. The other valley, beginning with the southern point, is not so deep and continuous at first, but is occupied by several smaller lakes and ponds, which lead to a distinct channel within a couple of miles. It extends approximately parallel with the first channel, with which it connects now and then by crosschannels. The series of marshes along the southwest side of Lake Madison lies in this channel, and south of Brant Lake it becomes the principal channel of the two and conveys the waters which flow from Lake Madison and Brant Lake, and which form Skunk Creek. The resemblance of Lake Madison to a mighty river is very striking. Its winding course and its alternation of abrupt banks and low bottoms with trees deepen the impression. In 1881 it first, to the knowledge of white men, began to flow out by a cross channel into Skunk Creek. The hills between these twin channels rise in some cases to more than 100 feet, and have their full share of bowlders.

It is interesting to compare this channel with the Lake Wentworth channel. Both of them have a southeast direction, both are excavated in the higher plain of the region, and both seem to have had their lower courses changed at a subsequent stage. While the stream occupying the Lake Wentworth channel turned northeast, the one occupying Madison Lake channel turns southward. On the other hand, they differ in that the lake portion of Madison Lake channel was still occupied while that of Battle Creek channel was vacated. Hence we find that the Lake Wentworth channel is excavated only to the depth of 40 feet below the plain, while that of Lake Madison is 100 feet below the

plain. It should be noticed also that the Madison Lake channel is mainly external to the moraine, while the other passes through the moraine. We may notice also a correspondence between these two streams and the two principal branches of Smith Creek, in the Red Lake region.

The lower course of Skunk Creek lies in a broad, flat-bottomed valley with abrupt sides, and with its western bank, where it has been examined, nearly 100 feet higher than its eastern. Furthermore, the western edge of its valley is covered with bowldery knolls, suggesting a morainic origin; but more probably they are of the same formation as the bowldery osar-like ridges to be described in a future section.

Split Rock rises in Pipestone County, Minnesota, and flows south and southwest to the Big Sioux below the great bend. The most important tributary, which is in some sense the principal stream, is Pipestone Creek, which, rising near the same point, joins the Split Rock on the Minnesota line 6 miles south of the northeast corner of Minnehaha County. Its valley has been so affected by the red quartzite that it has been frequently wrongly mapped. In Palisade Township it passes through a narrow gorge about 4 miles in length. This is walled below on either side with perpendicular walls of quartzite. These rise about 60 feet above the water, and the gorge in its narrowest place is about the same in breadth. The confining of the stream by this rock has prevented the widening of its valley, as is frequent in other streams of the region. It is not probable that this gorge is mainly the work of the Split Rock, because its rocky sides are not continuous. They recede at many points some distance from the stream, and become buried by the drift. In such localities they are, nevertheless, cut into chimneys and cliffs, as though they were formed by some agency long before the later deposit, possibly by ages of weathering, perhaps by the action of the sea itself. Just below Palisade another tributary comes in from the north which has a wider valley, and on this account has had the credit of being the main stream. The exposure at Palisade has been well described by Mr. Warren Upham in the thirteenth annual report of the Minnesota survey. Considerable valuable information has also been given concerning this locality in the Fifth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, page 201. The plate facing that page, however, gives an exaggerated idea of the breadth of the gorge. As the treatment of the older rocks is foreign to this paper, the reader is respectfully referred to those works for further information.

About the center of Brandon Township is an exposure of diorite for some rods along the west bank of the Split Rock.¹ It is much decomposed and is presumably an intrusive formation. In sec. 23 the red quartzite is again exposed near the surface of the stream, with several feet of chalkstone (Niobrara) directly above it. The junction between

¹ This is the rock which, since my examination of it, has been reported by Prof. W. H. Hobbs to be olivine-diabase.

the two, however, is not exposed. The numerous striæ found upon the rocks in the localities mentioned, and others farther east, will be considered in detail in another section.

The Big Sioux enters the region under consideration near Brookings, in a valley from three-fourths to $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles in width. Above the mouth of Battle Creek its valley is quite wide and about 140 feet below the high plain west, which is a narrow extension of that occupying most of the region. From that point to Egan it is bounded by the lower plain, which at the latter point is about 100 feet above the stream. This plain seems not to slope so rapidly as the stream, for at its upper end, near Madary, it is not more than 80 feet above the stream. The valley of the Big Sioux as a whole fails to present the abrupt sides and sharp edges which commonly characterize the other valleys of the region. A reason for this feature may be found in the check to its erosion by its crossing two important ledges of quartzite. One of these is at Dell Rapids. At Sioux Falls the course of the stream has been such that it has failed to excavate so deeply; probably the rock has not been so much exposed to erosion, for its surface is more than 100 feet lower than at Dell Rapids, and the force of the stream has been expended over a much wider surface.

The Dells at Dell Rapids.—There are three gorges at Dell Rapids; one is known as the Wet Dell, one as the Dry Dell, and the third is the present course of the Big Sioux. The course of the stream at the rapids is nearly due west. The Wet Dell leaves the present channel south of the town and takes a south-southwest direction for about $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles, where it strikes the present channel again. It is filled with water through most of its course and might easily be taken for a stream that has been dammed. When the Big Sioux is flooded the water flows through this channel. The Dry Dell leaves the present channel near where it turns south and continues its course westward. It is of less width than the Wet Dell, but is filled with earth to within 12 feet of the top of the rock. Its western end is hidden under the hills forming the west side of the valley. The present channel has excavated the rock to less depth than the Wet Dell. There are two or three pillar-like rocks standing in the center of the stream to a height equal to the ledge at the side. One of these has been utilized as a pier for the railroad bridge. Below the Dells the hills along the Big Sioux Valley are rarely over 80 feet above the stream. The surface of the quartzite above Dell Rapids is compact and even-topped, but shows few striæ. East of the Wet Dell a few were found bearing S. 25° E. to S. 40° E. The red quartzite appears again about 4 miles west of Dell Rapids, where it is 100 feet higher than at Dell Rapids.

Below Dell Rapids the Big Sioux continues the general features of the valley above and keeps a straight southerly course to the southern point of the Great Bend at Sioux Falls, where it turns sharply, first northeast, and then northwest and north, falling over the ledge of

quartzite (a height of about 80 feet), and then continuing in a northeasterly course to the vicinity of Brandon, where it turns sharply to the south again, which course it keeps for some distance. The distance from its sharp south bend to its sharp north bend is 10 miles, directly northeast. The fall of the river through this region may be learned from the following elevations, derived from railroad levels. In each case the level of the water is given.

Elevations along the Big Sioux, showing grade of river.

	Feet.
East of Volga.....	1, 596
Near Egan.....	1, 510
At Dell Rapids.....	1, 476
West of Sioux Falls.....	1, 403
At the Chicago, St. Paul, Minneapolis and Omaha Railway east of Sioux Falls.	1, 381
At the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway.....	1, 369
West of Brandon.....	1, 281
East of Canton.....	1, 217
Riverside near mouth.....	1, 079

Great Bend of the Big Sioux.—The bend of the Big Sioux at Sioux Falls is remarkable in two or three particulars. In its present course it flows south to the north edge of the quartzite ledge, it would seem for the express purpose of forming a durable series of rapids for water power. The Sioux quartzite is exposed west of the city near the level of the stream, and east of the town over nearly the whole surface of the falls, which are more than half a mile in length. The neck separating the bottom land north of the town from the gorge northeast is considerably lower than the hills in the bend farther south, and is less than 20 feet above the bottom land on the northwest. Its form and structure indicate that at one time the stream flowed across the neck. Why then did it not continue to do so and cut down through the till which probably forms the most of it? If it had done so it is probable that there would have been no falls; at least not until the river had cut back to the rock at Dell Rapids. (It may be that the quartzite occurs south of that place, but such is not known to be the fact.) The answer is believed to be probably the following: We have seen that there was much drainage from the ice sheet northward south of Sioux Falls, and when the ice occupied the outer moraine Skunk Creek was the channel by which all the Glacial streams from the vicinity of Volga to Sioux Falls found escape. Even supposing that the Big Sioux at that time took the shorter course, it is easy to see that the western side of the channel would be cut down most rapidly, and in this way the main channel would be drawn westward and southward until forced northward by the contact with the moraine and strong currents pouring over the lower portion of the moraine at that point. It may be stated here that while we have given, as we suppose, the immediate cause of the bend, the primary cause is to be found in the advance of the ice across the pre-Glacial course of the Big Sioux. No developments have been made

to corroborate the supposition, but it seems not improbable that the pre-Glacial course of the Big Sioux may have been southward into the Vermilion, and that in the advance of the ice toward the east there may have been a damming of the streams coming from the north, and the formation of a glacial lake over this region somewhat as was conceived to have been formed in the Red Lake region; with this difference, however, that while in the latter case it was of temporary duration, in this case the lacustrine epoch continued until the basin had become completely filled with drift material.

Bowldery knolls in the Coteau region.—In speaking of the moraine, reference has already been made to systems of osar-like ridges found on its outer slope. These extend out upon the extramorainic plain, and we will here give the more detailed description which has been promised. The system in this region which has been most closely observed is the one 5 to 6 miles northeast of Montrose. Its more prominent features are illustrated in Pls. IX and X.

The bowldery knolls are from 15 to 35 feet in height, and are arranged for the most part in a rude linear system lying in the bottom of a shallow valley which leads from a col or sag in the moraine eastward and southeastward to a branch of Skunk Creek. The head of the system, which begins quite gradually, lies along the north side of a channel-like lake half a mile long and perhaps a quarter as broad. This lake cuts the crest of the moraine transversely. As in the case of similar knolls near Crow Lake, the surrounding slopes are comparatively free from bowlders. Like that system, also, this one receives a branch which lies in a valley joining it from the northwest. The recency of the topography is attested by the occurrence of basins beside the knolls, which are yet undrained. The lake is about 40 feet below the highest adjacent point on the crest of the moraine, about 240 feet above the East Vermilion at Montrose, and 170 feet above the plain farther west. This system, like the systems in the Red Lake region already referred to, lies above the level of the loess.

The interior of the knolls was nowhere exposed, hence we can say nothing of their structure from direct examination; but from their general appearance as compared with some which were excavated northwest of Waterbury, South Dakota, we should expect to find them largely composed of stratified material.

Along the western edge of Skunk Creek Valley, also, there are bowldery knolls which rise to the height of 20 or 25 feet above the ponds just west of them. Though these have not been connected with gaps in the moraine, their proximity to an important stream and their separation from the morainic hills farther west by a plain 3 or 4 miles in width, as well as their lower elevation, may be taken as evidence that they belong to the same class of deposits as those already mentioned.

Along the Split Rock are found systems of knolls which appear to

be of a rather novel character. They are of rounded form and are found in clusters rather than in ranges. The most important cluster that has been observed is about 6 miles southwest of Pipestone. They rise to the height of from 25 to 40 feet above the general level and nearly 200 feet above the Split Rock southeast. They are arranged around the head of a valley leading into that stream. The slope of the southeast side of the valley, rising 120 feet, is wholly occupied with the red quartzite. There are about fifteen knolls in this cluster, and it occupies most of the surface of two sections. A few others are found along the east side of the Split Rock below the junction with Pipestone Creek, but they are found only in clusters of two or three. From their form and altitude they stand out conspicuously, although they do not attain the height of the first cluster, not rising generally more than 150 feet above the stream. These, which are near Garretson, South Dakota, have been referred to on a previous page. All of these knolls present the same features. Their summits are covered with pebbles and a few small boulders. Two exposures were examined which had been made by the opening of the summits of these hills for gravel and sand. Their interior structure, where examined, was found to consist of irregular layers of pebbly clay and stratified gravel and sand to a depth of 5 or 6 feet. Below that for 5 or 6 feet farther pure sand was found. Whether the sand comprises the bulk of the hill has not been learned. Their form and position suggest the idea that these hills were primarily dunes which have been thinly veneered with drift and somewhat shaped by aqueous and glacio-natant action. This is not easily reconcilable with the supposition that this locality has been swept very lately, if at all, by an ice sheet.

Hummocks in the Coteau region.—At various points the red quartzite ledges present the peculiar phenomena which may most aptly be described by this term. The upper layer of the rock becomes bulged, and is heaved up in a domed or conical form to the height of 5 or 6 feet. These have been described by Prof. N. H. Winchell in his report on Rock County, Minnesota. The surface of the hummock is covered by these blocks in their natural order, but with the joints between them broadening more and more toward the center of the hummock. That they are of recent origin is indicated by the occurrence of striae around them, as if they were not in existence when the striation was in progress. Professor Winchell's suggestion that they may have been caused by ice—i. e., alternate freezing and thawing with the change of seasons, aided by the force of vegetation and a little soil gradually getting into the openings—seems quite plausible. They are apt to occur at equidistant intervals.

Striae in the Coteau region.—The red quartzite, which is frequently exposed in this region, abounds in striae. They present several novel features. The striae are distinctly shown, rarely more than 2 feet in length and not often more than one-eighth inch in depth. They are

commonly quite minute. They are frequently attended with crescentic cracks, whose ends incline toward the direction of movement. These are arranged parallel with one another at approximately equal distances. Systems of these are found with breadths of from one-half inch to 18 inches, and may sometimes be 3 feet in length. The larger ones reveal more of a parabolic than circular form. In the larger systems the longer cracks are intercalated with the shorter ones, suggesting the coexistence of two systems of vibration. The general appearance of such a system is fairly represented in fig. 27 (1), which was carefully drawn from nature. Not infrequently the striae with which these crescents are connected have been worn away, and the crescentic cracks are the only record remaining of the original marking. The depth to which the cracks extend varies from the merest trifle to at least an inch, and it is not improbable that further examination may increase this figure.

The inclination of these cracks to the surface, near the axis of the system, is forward, but gradually turns backward as the distance from the axis increases, until it may incline quite strongly backward.

Besides these cracks, which are clearly referable to ice action, there are others resembling them somewhat, in which the crescentic marking turns in the opposite direction. These are also apt to show an equidistant arrangement, but are never as near together nor as regular in their shape and position as those already described. They may be ascribed, with considerable confidence, to the ripple marks preserved in the stratification of the rocks. Fig. 27 (2) shows a case where both these kinds of markings occur.

A careful study of the striae of this region shows more variation in direction than has been commonly ascribed to glacial action. This will appear from the table of striae given below. Not infrequently three or

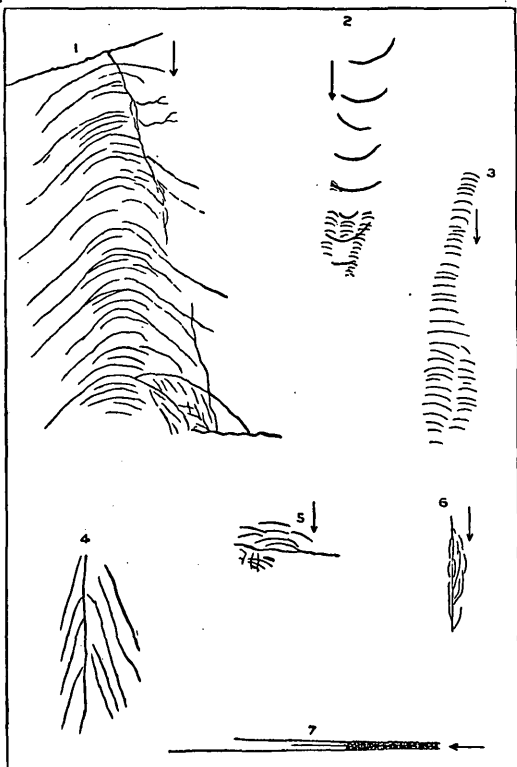


FIG. 27.—Various markings on Sioux quartzite.

four systems of striae, of widely varying direction, occur upon the smooth surface of the rock with equal distinctness. Some of the novelties which have been observed are shown in fig. 27. Curved striae not infrequently appear.

Stria found in the Coteau des Prairies region.

[Corrections are made for magnetic variation.]

Locality.	Direction.
Pipestone, Minnesota:	
Near the Three Maidens.....	{ S. 30°-26°-28°-40° W. S. 14° E.
Near Pipestone Falls.....	{ S. 1°-19°-24°-27°-28°-37° W; S. 0°-2°-3° E.
Pipestone City	{ S. 22°-23°-25°-26°-32°-37°-38° W. S. 34°-42°-38°-45° E.
Three miles southwest of Pipestone...	S. 3°-7°-13° E.
About 8 miles SSW. of Pipestone.....	S. 22° W.
Four miles north of Palisade.....	S. 14°-18° E.
Palisade:	
At the southeast edge of exposure.	S. 33°-38° E.
One mile east.....	S. 23° E.
One and one-half miles south of Palisade.	S. 13°-18°-28°-48°-53°-58°-63° E.
Two miles north of Valley Springs....	S. 8°-53°-62°-63° E.
Northwest corner of Iowa	S. 8°-9°-13°-16°-18°-19°-23°-30°-38°-53° E.
Opposite mouth of Split Rock:	
Inside of the moraine.....	S. 13° E.
One mile outside of the moraine..	S. 13° E.
Sioux Falls:	
Near Milwaukee station	S. 13° curving to 8° E.
East of Cascade mills (recent)....	N. 28°-45° W.
Southeast of Queen Bee mill.....	S. 43°-53° E.
East of C., St. P., M. & O. station..	E. [mag.] = S. 88° E.
Dell Rapids, east of Wet Dell.....	S. 13°-23°-28° E.
Four miles west of Dell Rapids.....	{ S. 2° W. S. 3°-13°-18° E.

CHAPTER IV.

THE DRIFT REGION INSIDE OF THE OUTER MORaine.

This is naturally divided into three principal parts: The second moraine, the region between the moraines, the portion inside of the second moraine.

SECOND OR GARY MORaine.

Several circumstances combine to make the second moraine less prominent in height, in breadth, and in complexity:

(1) It was formed upon a nearly level plain left by the great ice sheet. There were therefore no very prominent features to distort or elevate the moraine, as was the case with the outer moraine.

(2) Another circumstance, which was also a result of its formation upon a plain, was its predominating tangential drainage. As the ice sheet retreated from the principal moraine, its edge in general withdrew to lower ground. Hence while occupying the second moraine the waters tended to flow along its edge to the two principal streams, the James and the Vermilion. This tangential drainage tended to erode the moraine in some cases and to bury it in others.

(3) The ice sheet had probably diminished considerably in thickness, at least toward its lower margin; therefore its pushing power and probably its velocity had decreased. Both of these would diminish the amount of the material crowded into the moraine.

(4) It is not unlikely that the period of formation of the second moraine was much shorter than that of the first.

Northeast of Turtle Point 6 or 8 miles, and occupying the narrow space between Firesteel and Sand creeks, is a range of stony hills presenting the usual features of a moraine. It rises frequently to the height of 100 feet above the general level, or 130 feet above Sand Creek. Gravel and sand are very abundant, also bowlders of limestone and gray granite. Its extent northwestward has not been determined, but it probably is to be connected with stony knobs southwest of Wessington Station. From the before-mentioned locality northeast of Wessington Springs, the moraine extends in a discontinuous system of irregularly crescentic clusters of sharp knobby hills which are from 20 to 60 feet above the very even plain. Their convexity is toward the west. The inner edge, along which the principal range lies, passes $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles west of Woonsocket, where it rises to an elevation of 75 feet. It is there called the Pony Hills. which are sketched in fig. 28. The

ridge continues 4 or 5 miles farther, then disappears. At Twin Lakes another ridge rises to the height of 30 feet and continues south 2 or 3 miles. Light bowldery ridges just east of the Firesteel in Jerauld County should doubtless be reckoned as portions of the second moraine.

South of Twin Lakes the principal development, which, however, is little more than a broad swell surmounted with a few bowldery knolls, passes 5 or 6 miles west of Letcher in a south-southeasterly direction to the Firesteel northeast of Mount Vernon. South of the Firesteel, in the northern portion of T. 103, R. 61, the surface rises into broken gravelly ridges extending in a southeastern direction. Between them are numerous basins elongated in a northwest-southeast direction, which, from their position and connection, suggest the action of a stream successively shifting from one to another toward the northeast. Possibly the Firesteel formed them after it entered the moraine and followed

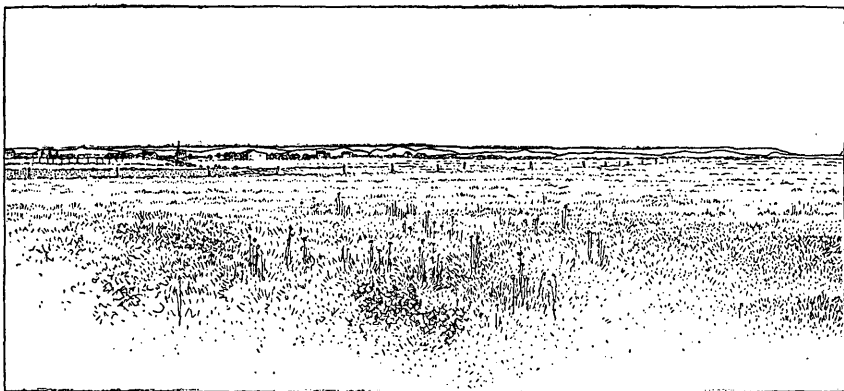


FIG. 28.—Pony Hills, near Woonsocket, South Dakota.

the retreating ice. Three or 4 miles west of Mitchell one of the more prominent valleys near the outside of the moraine connects with Enemy Creek. Four or 5 miles south of Mitchell are two ranges of long narrow hills, about 60 feet in height, lying west-northwest, east-southeast; these are known as Enemy Creek Hills (fig. 29). A view from them shows less conspicuous knolls in the plain to the southwest. These hills form one of the most prominent portions of the moraine. A peculiarity of their position is that they lie on ground lower than that a little northeast of them. One mile east of the junction of the Firesteel and the James is a very conspicuous hill, locally known as Medicine Hill. It rises about 210 feet above the James River, and 90 feet above the general level of the lacustrine plain surrounding it east, north, and west. A range of low hills extends south from it and curves to the southeast. It is evidently the head of an interlobular moraine, which became nearly a glacial island during the latest occupation of this moraine.

West and southeast of Rockport the banks of the James show several stony knobs. These are especially numerous in the northern portion of T. 101, R. 58. It would seem that here, near sec. 2, was the apex of a reentrant angle of the moraine. Extending from near sec. 33, 2 miles east of Rockport, in an east-southeast direction, is a long, shallow, ancient channel, now occupied by a miry slough 2 or 3 miles in length. This is at a level of about 110 feet above the James. About one-half mile east of the river bluffs at Rockport it makes a slight bend from a south-southwest direction, which is about in line with the upper portion of Pierre Creek, to a southeast direction. This part of its course is among very gravelly knobs, rising about 40 feet above it. Among them along its west side is a line of small kettle-hole ponds nearly parallel with it. It continues south to the ravine of a small

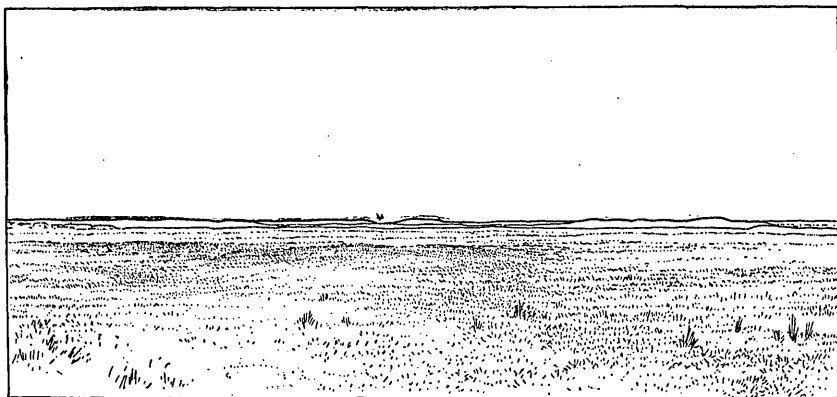


FIG. 29.—Enemy Creek Hills from the northeast. v Enemy Creek.

creek which connects with the James. This channel seems to be a trace of the internal drainage of this angle of the moraine.

In or near sec. 33, T. 101, R. 58, is a cluster of morainic knobs which give an extensive view of the plain to the east, although not apparently up to the level of the land west of the James. Southeast from this point the inner edge of the moraine extends quite directly to Wolf Creek, 2 or 3 miles above its junction with the James. Along considerable of this portion there is found just within the moraine a chain of shallow sloughs and ponds, the moraine itself appearing somewhat like the edge of a terrace rising 40 or 50 feet above these ponds.

In or near sec. 4, T. 99, R. 58, is a cluster of high stony knobs interspersed with deep ponds, some of them covering several acres. These seem to connect in a semicircular curve of low and scattered domes with the high knolls near sec. 33, before mentioned. The moraine has not been definitely traced farther east of James River.

The line described thus far is clearly the inner limit of the moraine, comprising some of the last-formed ridges. It should be remembered that the retreat of the ice sheet had from the nature of the case been

more rapid on the west, hence the ridges are more scattered. Other knolly areas which should be correlated as earlier-formed members of this moraine may be mentioned as follows:

Several miles of knolls along the east side of the Firesteel, about 10 miles west of Woonsocket; another, similarly related to the same stream, 12 miles west of Letcher; a broad strip 2 or 3 miles east of Mount Vernon, extending southeast to Enemy Creek a few miles west of the before-mentioned Enemy Creek Hills; light ridges 2 to 3 miles north of Olivet, trending east of south. Possibly the stony hills east of Olivet and those northeast of Scotland are a modified portion of this moraine, but more likely they are of an osar nature. Then, on the north and east of James Ridge the moraine appears again, first feebly, but rising quite markedly as it turns east across the James in the southern border of T. 95, Rs. 55 and 56, being specially prominent a few miles south of Walshtown. Thence northeast for a few miles it failed to form, probably because at that time the main drainage was in that direction rather than in the line of James River. In the southeastern part of T. 96, R. 55, it gradually rises again.

About 8 miles southeast of Menno is the rather abrupt southern end of a morainic ridge, which extends northward and circles round the northwestern extremity of Turkey Ridge, from which it is separated by a broad, shallow valley. In this valley are the head waters of Clay and Turkey Ridge creeks. Having passed about halfway between Freeman and Childstown the moraine takes a turn more to the east and crosses the West Vermilion halfway between Marion Junction and Parker. Through this portion of its course it may be described as a broad, even-topped swell, rising about 50 feet near Menno, 140 feet near Freeman, and 75 feet near Marion Junction, above the plain to the northwest. Its inner surface slopes rather abruptly. Its outer slope declines very gently. This latter character is best developed southwest of Parker.

One of the most conspicuous points of this moraine is found in sec. 2, T. 99, R. 54, close to the valley of the West Vermilion. It rises about 160 feet above the stream and about 75 feet above the general level. From this point the moraine keeps a course about midway between the East and West Vermilion east of Canistota and northward. While both inner and outer slopes are encroached upon and modified by the drainage into the Vermilions, the summit shows numerous ponds, and, at intervals, low stony knobs. The gap through which the West Vermilion passes is quite narrow, with abrupt sides. Five miles west of Montrose the moraine is a simple continuous low swell, a little roughened on its summit. Shallow basins are more numerous on its outer slope and summit. Along its outer foot they form a connected chain in a shallow sag running parallel with the moraine. The summit rises 45 feet above the plain outside and 30 feet above that within.

Similar features characterize it also east and northeast of Howard,

except that rather conspicuous knobs appear here and there, and it approaches more closely to the East Vermilion, its crest being a little west of Winfred. A remarkable line of broad ponds, just east of the summit of the moraine, extends for 10 or 15 miles parallel with the East Vermilion and 2 or 3 miles west of it. This corresponds to the smaller one before noted west of Montrose.

REGION BETWEEN THE SECOND AND PRINCIPAL MORAINES.

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS.

This region differs from that outside the moraine in several well-marked particulars:

(1). First and most prominently, in the absence of erosive topography, the streams traversing it being usually limited to narrow channels with abrupt sides. There is little or no trace of watersheds. One does not dream of the nearness of a stream till he comes upon the immediate edge of its channel.

(2). The surface everywhere manifests what may be called a sink-and-swell topography. Sometimes the swells or low ridges are much elongated, and have a general trend somewhat like the waves upon the sea. At other times the elongated character is not prominent where there is an indiscriminate mixing of low, rounded domes with shallow, circular basins.

The amplitude of undulation, or the ratio of the difference in altitude between the tops of the hills and the bottoms of the depressions to the distance between hilltops, varies greatly in different portions. In many cases it may be 5 feet to a mile or a mile and a half. Perhaps nowhere in the whole area under consideration is it more than 40 feet to a half mile, and examples of this extreme occur but rarely.

(3). Nothing like buttes is found in this region. While this is true in general, there are inequalities of great extent, probably due to pre-Glacial topography, which will be mentioned as we describe the area more in detail.

WESTERN REGION.

Under this head we would include all of the country lying west of a line running north from the Choteau Creek Hills to the moraine and outside of the latter. This has an oblique, fan-like form, with its narrow or handle portion extending northward, east of Turtle Ridge, and drained by the north branch of the Firesteel.

Where this widens, south of Turtle Ridge, there begins a valley extending southward which is now occupied by the upper portion of the West Firesteel, then with White Lake and the valley of Pratt Creek. This valley lies approximately parallel with the moraine west of it. Although through the most of its course it now contains but little water, it bears evidence of having been at some time occupied by

a stream approaching the James River in size. The watershed between White Lake and the West Firesteel is very low. One would suspect on first sight that the drainage from White Lake was into the Firesteel. Pratt Creek in its lower portion, near Castalia, has eroded a valley over 200 feet in depth, along which are immense beds of gravel and numerous boulders.

South of the Firesteel the general level gradually rises to an altitude of over 1,500 feet at Plankinton and beyond 9 or 10 miles, where the country begins as gradually to slope southward, forming a broad, low swell running east and west, which displays an amplitude of undulation of 5 feet to the half mile. Upon its southern slope lie the deep valleys of Andes and Wet Choteau creeks. About their upper courses, in the vicinity of Grandview, the surface of the country is unusually rough, the amplitude being from 35 to 40 feet to the half mile. The general level of the country gradually rises again as it approaches the moraine southwest, but it does not extend to the moraine, for from the vicinity of Pratt Creek to the Choteau Creek Hills there is a broad shallow valley extending parallel with the moraine, which seems to have been formed by the flow of water toward the principal outlets. This valley near the southwest end of Andes Lake is over 300 feet below the general level of the country south. It is occupied by the tributaries of Pease Creek, by the upper portion of the creek flowing through the Andes Lake Outlet, and by the middle course of Choteau Creek. Elsewhere, also, there are dry channels extending through it, which are probably filled with water in springtime.

Aside from the variations in level which have already been alluded to, there is a more general slope of the whole area toward the east. Yorktown is 230 feet above Mount Vernon, according to railroad levels, which indicates a slope of 10 feet to the mile; yet no one in traversing it would speak of it as other than a very level plain. An indication of a similar slope is derived from a preliminary survey between Chamberlain and Springfield. About 9 miles northwest of Lake Andes the altitude is 1,665 feet, also by railroad levels, while in Lower Choteau Creek Valley, likewise inside the moraine, it is 300 feet lower.

More evidence of this eastward slope and of its probable recent origin is seen near White Lake, and also near Lake Andes, in the apparent change of drainage in recent times. As before mentioned, White Lake and the upper portion of the West Firesteel lie in the same valley. The country east is level and much lower than the country about Plankinton. Evidently the drainage of the region was at one time southward into Pratt Creek. Such must have been the case until the ice sheet had receded nearly to the second moraine. At that time, or possibly considerably later, the drainage from the southwest Westsingtons and Turtle Ridge turned eastward, beginning the West Firesteel. This may, it is true, indicate nothing more than the withdrawal of the ice, without change of slope.

At Lake Andes the evidence seems more strongly in favor of the recent tipping of the region. Extending southwest from the southern end of Lake Andes through the gap is a water course less than 10 feet above the water in the lake, which appears as though it had been recently occupied. Southeast from the central portion of the lake extends a long narrow slough, connecting, it is believed, with Wet Choteau Creek. That this is the fact is not certainly determined. Its occupancy by water for several miles in that direction has been observed. The natural suggestion which comes to mind in considering this case is that the plain about Lake Andes has been tipped toward the east, so that its western outlet is now dry, and its waters are seeking drainage toward the southeast by what was, perhaps, formerly a tributary of the lake.

Other reasons for believing in a recent westward elevation of the country will be considered further on. This case is more significant than the last because we can hardly explain the westward flow by the occupation of the eastern outlet by the ice, as in the previous case. We see no reason for supposing that the ice would linger longer in the lower Choteau Valley than near the Andes Lake Outlet, but contrariwise.

Ancient lakes.—In this western region certain areas bear evidence upon the surface of lacustrine origin. These are found, as before stated, in the valley of the West Firesteel, which may be considered as a former extension of White Lake. Another is found southwest of Mitchell, extending from the second moraine southward to the vicinity of Plainview. In both these regions the surface is very level, there being little or no trace of the undulating surface usually found upon the till. Crossing T. 100, R. 62, on the borders of this lacustrine area are two or three light and disconnected lines of low stony ridges suggestive of morainic action, but possibly due to thrusts of ice against the shore. Along the western border of this latter lacustrine area rise Pony Creek and Twelve-mile Creek, which flow eastward to the James, in valleys resembling those already described.

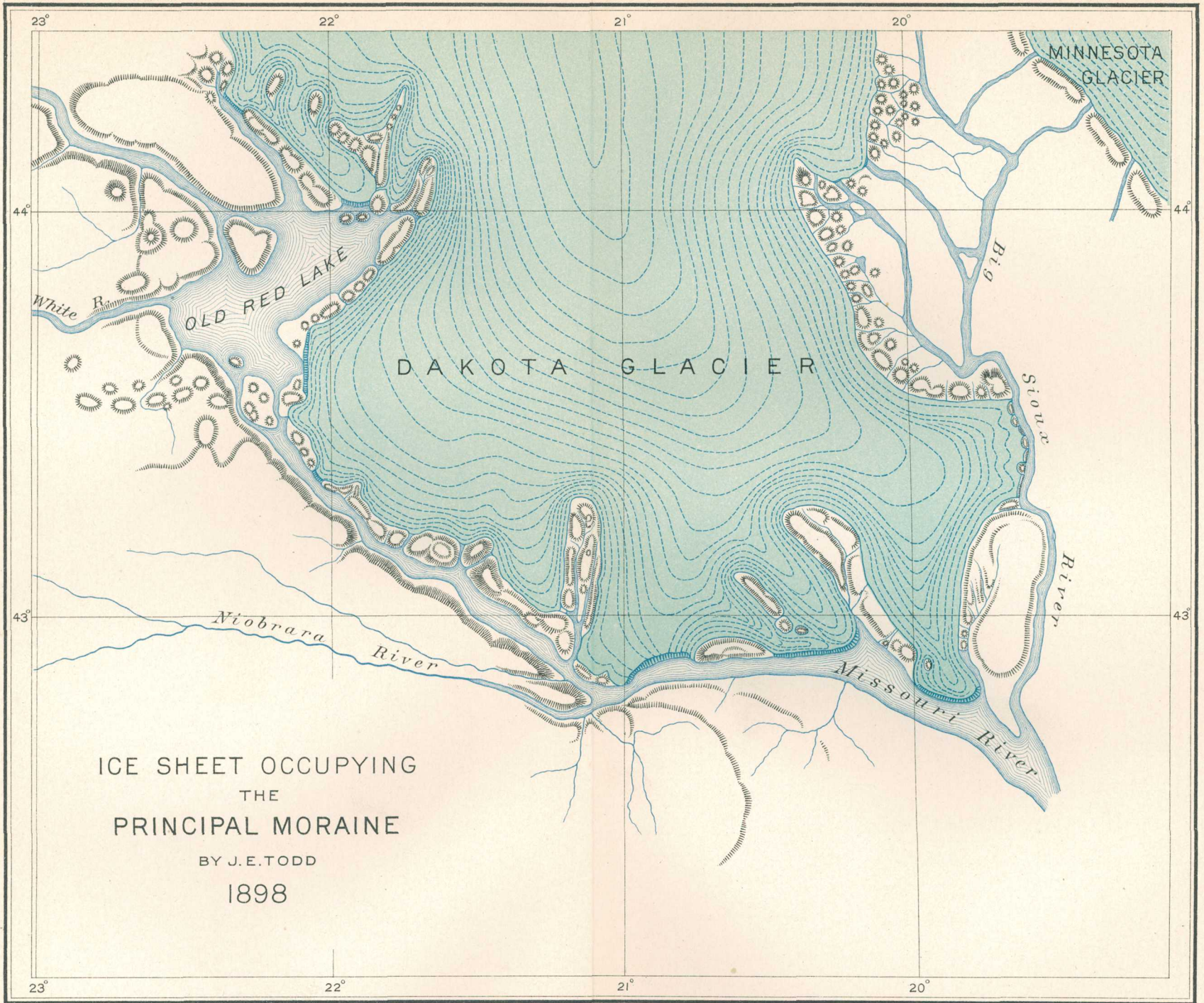
Ancient channels.—Besides the ancient valley of Pratt Creek and that lying inside the moraine from the Cedar Creek Hills to Choteau Creek, which have been mentioned in our general description of the country, there are several minor ones which are not so closely connected with the general topography.

A channel extends in T. 104, R. 63, from the Firesteel to the origin of Enemy Creek. In sec. 34, T. 102, R. 61, a narrow channel with abrupt sides and 40 feet in depth leaves the north branch of Enemy Creek and extends southeast to a branch of Pony Creek. The verification of this last statement was kindly accomplished by Mr. G. W. Bailey, who lives in the vicinity. As this lies in the lacustrine plain before mentioned, it indicates a flow of water around the ice sheet subsequent to the stage in which the lake was formed, a relation which reminds us of what was found in the Red Lake region. Again, a channel extends in T. 98, R. 59,

from Dry Creek to Lone Tree Creek, and the lower course of Dry Creek connects with the mouth of Pony or Twelvemile Creek. By these channels the drainage of the west side of the glacier was effected during the time of the formation of the second moraine, as shown in Pls. XV and XVI.

Wells.—With regard to the structure of the drift formations throughout the area, considerable light has been derived from wells and other excavations. In general, the structure seems to be, as usual, upon glaciated surfaces. First, there is a layer of yellow pebble clay from 10 to 30 feet thick, which passes below insensibly into blue pebble clay, or frequently there is a layer of sand between them.

Along the foot of Turtle Ridge the drift seems unusually thin. The Cretaceous clays are reached within 15 to 20 feet of the surface. Near White Lake the drift is much deeper—more than 50 feet at least. Near White Lake Station several wells of considerable depth were dug, none of them reaching through the drift. The town well was 90 feet deep, most of it being through blue clay. No water had been found when visited. Fragments of wood were found at a depth of nearly 80 feet. One, apparently a root, was over a foot in length and 3 inches in diameter. Generally there is found in that vicinity first 40 feet of yellow clay, then 30 feet of blue clay, then a layer of sand, then blue clay again. Water has not been found except in the yellow clay in basins. At Plankinton there is first usually 75 feet of yellow clay, then 55 feet of blue clay, then chalk or shale containing water. Near Grandview, wells, which are usually dug in basins, are about 10 or 12 feet in depth. A well dug in town upon the hilltop, I was reliably informed, was 150 feet deep and had failed to reach water. All below a few feet of yellow clay at the surface was blue clay. Sixty feet of it was dug, the rest bored. No trace of pebbles was found in the last 10 feet. At Mount Vernon a well 108 feet deep, and containing 52 feet of water, was dug through 40 feet of clay, the rest being chalkstone. This chalkstone appears on the general slope of the country 2 or 3 miles west of Mitchell. It also appears in natural exposures near the general level 10 miles southwest of Mitchell, in ravines connected with Enemy Creek; also near the bottom of the valley of the Firesteel northwest and north of Mitchell, and in a ravine southeast of that place. This chalkstone, which before weathering is bluish, and is then sometimes called soapstone, has been struck in wells 8 miles north of Grandview. At Castalia, on a low bottom of Platt Creek, wells 25 feet deep bring to the surface mostly blue pebbly clay. At Plainview wells 44 feet deep were mostly in blue pebbly clay and furnished poor water. At Emsley post-office, a little west of Plainview, a well was observed about 50 feet in depth, which showed little but pebbly clay and very little water. Several miles southwest of Plainview a well 30 feet in depth showed mostly blue pebbly clay, but at the bottom a thin layer of sand and gravel, below which there was apparently shale.



In the western portion of the region now under consideration traces of wood have been frequently reported as found in wells. Most of them seem likely to be of the sort already mentioned as having been found in the well at White Lake, which probably is a relic of preglacial or circumglacial forests.

An ancient tamarack swamp.—Near Grandview, in the southeast quarter of sec. 33, T. 100, R. 64, were found traces of more recent occupation of the region by trees. In a well which had been dug on the edge of a basin near a branch of Andes Creek at the depth of 20 feet was found a layer of muck several inches in thickness, in which were pieces of wood with numerous fresh-water shells of nearly a dozen species. But the most remarkable thing was the stem of a hemlock or tamarack about 10 inches in diameter lying across the well, and in the muck were numerous cones evidently of the same species. Overlying this trace of a tamarack swamp was mud of various colors and consistency, evidently washed from the surrounding hillsides. That it should be so deeply buried was chiefly explained by its connection with the channel of Andes Creek. This was conclusive evidence that the region had been occupied more or less by timber since the ice had covered the region, possibly while the second moraine was in process of formation. Similar finds are reported from wells several miles west of that place.¹

Spotted surface of the country.—One peculiar characteristic of the surface of the country about Plankinton and west is the occurrence of patches of clay spread irregularly in the black loam, which is the usual soil upon the drift, and in this portion still forms most of the surface. These clay patches are very irregular in shape and in depth. In wet weather they are very soft and miry, and in dry weather very hard and frequently seamed with mud cracks. They are usually covered with what is commonly called alkali grass (*Triticum repens*), which in the latter part of the summer is dead, while the blue joint and other grasses upon the loam are still green.

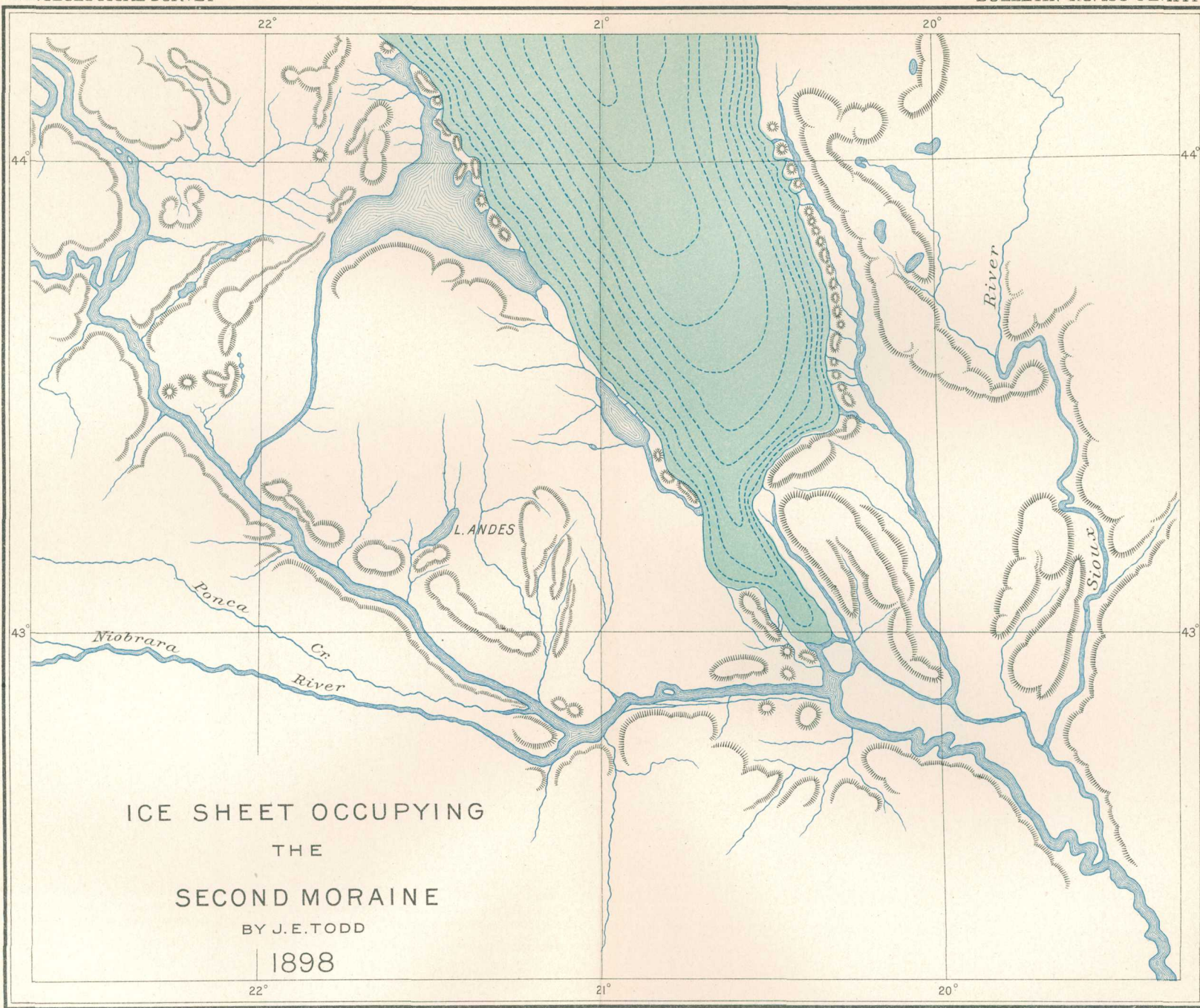
In a few shallow cuts near Plankinton it was noticed that the clay extended in a horizontal direction and that it and the loam were coarsely interstratified. It is possible that this peculiar character of the country is due to its having been occupied by shallow waters from which clay and loam were precipitated somewhat as clay and sand are deposited upon bars along the Missouri at the present time. Another explanation may be found to meet some cases better, viz, that the clay patches are due to masses of Cretaceous clay carried along bodily by the forces of the glacier and deposited as bowlders which have afterwards been flattened out. Another and perhaps more probable explanation is that alkaline waters continuing in the depressions have dissolved the silica.

¹ Professor Call determines the fresh-water shells abounding in the muck as follows: *Lymnophyes palustris* Say, *L. decidiosa* Say, *Gyraulus parvus* Say, *Valvata sincera* Say, *Segmentina armigera* Say.

JAMES VALLEY.

This valley occupies the portion between the moraines from the east side of the region already considered to Turkey Ridge, where the two moraines are in contact. The western portion of this region resembles that already described. Perhaps little need be added concerning it. Most of it is nearly level. The exceptions are found near the larger streams and in the vicinity of the principal moraine, particularly near the head of the interlobular portions. We have already noticed the rougher portion, which appears along the eastern rim of the semicircular valley around Choteau Creek Hills. With the rough area near Grandview this may indicate that the ice sheet had a faint tendency to form a moraine between the principal and second moraines. Another somewhat exceptional feature is the occurrence of ponds and lakes in unusual numbers along a line running west from Lesterville for 10 or 12 miles. The principal streams of this region are Emanuel Creek on the west, James River near the center, and Clay Creek on the east. Emanuel Creek, west of Scotland, flows in a wide valley about 50 feet below its eastern rim and at a level higher than the plain a few miles east. Near its mouth it occupies a narrow valley 125 to 150 feet deep. The James River has a valley with abrupt stony sides and from a quarter to half of a mile in width. Its depth at Milltown is about 115 feet; northeast of Scotland, about 150 feet. Clay Creek occupies a broad valley near the moraine, which evidently at one time was the principal outlet from the ice sheet. This valley near the moraine is 50 to 75 feet in depth below the plain northwest. The tributaries of these streams have cut down to the same level near their junctions, and occupy narrow valleys with abrupt sides throughout nearly their whole course. They rise in basins or shallow winding valleys. Through the dry seasons they consist of chains of deep pools, with little or no running water between.

Exposures of older rocks.—Along the James River we discover again many natural exposures of older rocks. The chalkstone of the Niobrara is exposed on the banks of a small stream near Scotland, about 75 feet below the general level. North of Milltown for several miles the Dakota sandstone occupies both banks of the James, rising 40 or 50 feet above the stream. At Rockport is an extensive exposure of Sioux quartzite covering several hundred acres, and just above it, on the east side of the river, there is chalkstone in several localities. Along Enemy Creek both the Dakota sandstone and the red quartzite are exposed, but the latter was too low to be touched by the glacier. The chalkstone shows conspicuously along Clay Creek 120 feet above the stream and about 50 feet above the general level of the plain west. It is also widely exposed along the Firesteel and the channels to the south, including Enemy Creek, as far west as Mount Vernon.



VERMILION VALLEY.

This region resembles the western region in outline, except that its fan-like portion is more extended toward the southeast. Its narrow part, corresponding to the handle of the fan, is occupied by the valley of the East Vermilion. The general slope of the whole surface is toward the southeast. This is indicated by the present direction of the streams, and there is no evidence of a change of course, as in the western portion of the region between the moraines. There is little trace of lacustrine action except along the Lower Vermilion, and this evidently was greater during the recession of the ice than while the second moraine was forming. Along the east side of Turkey Ridge numerous narrow northwest-southeast valleys indicate the action of running water during the earlier recession of the ice. About Swan Lake, in Turner County, occupying an east-west strip 3 or 4 miles in width, is a rough portion showing many low stony hills and ponds. This continues northeastward past Lenox, and may be correlated with the trace of a minor moraine before noticed. The average altitude of this strip is not greater than the country north and south of it. North of Swan Lake, about Turkey Ridge Creek, the country is unusually flat and clayey, forming the broad shallow valley of Turkey Ridge Creek, which is the principal tributary of the Vermilion.

The East Vermilion and Vermilion form the principal stream of this region. The East Vermilion occupies a deep valley just inside the outer moraine. West of Madison it is about 200 feet below the summit of the outer moraine and about 90 feet below the high swell just west of it, which farther south is the second moraine. In its upper portion it displays a very bowldery terrace along the inside of the principal moraine.

Below the mouth of the West Vermilion the stream passes through a broad basin-like valley, perhaps once a lake, till it approaches Turner or Davis, its immediate valley being only 15 to 25 feet deep. Near Turner its channel deepens to 35 feet, is about 50 feet a little north of Lodi, 60 feet at Bloomingdale, and over 80 feet at its mouth. The broad plain along its lower course is very level and even. It extends with similar characters through the principal moraine and terminates as a terrace of the Missouri River.

There is no distinct watershed between the Vermilion and the Big Sioux. The plain reaches through to the Big Sioux without much variation in level. There is probably a very slight slope to the southeast, but railroad levels scarcely show it. The course of the streams in that direction seems more the result of their following back the ice sheet in its recession.

REGION INSIDE THE SECOND MORaine.

This portion of our field has a very even surface. From the inside of the second moraine west of the James the surface extends eastward as almost a dead level to the west side of Miner County, where it begins to rise gradually toward the east, and so continues in that direction to the second moraine on the east. This eastern portion presents the usual topography of slight swells and basins, with the further modification of broad shallow valleys running southward. These are occupied by various branches of the Vermilion and the James. Beginning on the east, we have the West Vermilion River, Wolf Creek, and Redstone Creek.

Upon the level portion of this region the streams take a southwest or southeast direction, as the case may be, to the James River. The whole of this region, except it may be a small portion north of Woonsocket, presents the features of an ancient lake bed filled with drift deposits. Its boundary, so far as yet ascertained, lies close along the inside of the second moraine from the vicinity of Woonsocket to Medicine Hill. This line passes a mile or so west of Letcher, through Mitchell, where, however, it is obscured by knolls, thence curving east and northeast around the foot of Medicine Hill. From that point it curves southeast for a few miles, then around again to the northeast and north, and passes about 2 miles east of Diana, and continues north indefinitely. It seems not improbable that this ancient lake extended as far north as Lake Tchanchicaha. This conclusion is strongly sustained by railroad levels. According to the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul survey the altitude of the station at Mitchell, which is a little below the general level, is 710 feet; Letcher, 713 feet; Mellette, which is 100 miles farther north and again on the level of the lake-like plain, 712 feet; Warren, 713 feet; Aberdeen, 715 feet, while in the region now under consideration, Diana, which is near the eastern boundary of the lake, is 727 feet. These altitudes are above Lake Michigan.

The general surface shows a thin covering of silt, but boulders and pebbles are found a little below the surface. Along the west side of the area there is an old channel, now a marsh called Long Lake, which extends from 2 or 3 miles east of Woonsocket southward to the vicinity of Letcher. Along this marsh and south to Mitchell the surface and subsoil are sandy. Probably this same sandy strip extends northward along Sand Creek, but this has not been ascertained. Around Forestburg, according to report, the sand has collected in well-developed dunes. A portion may be kames. The James River has cut a narrow, sharp-edged valley through this plain. It is 50 feet below the level of the plane near Huron, 60 feet at Forestburg, 75 feet east of Letcher, and 90 feet east of Mitchell.

This lake seems to have been for the most part filled to the level of its surface, but south of Diana (Artesian), and north of Letcher, peculiar

depressions were noticed which may be most readily explained by supposing that the lake at that point was not filled. The surface presents low mounds and broad ridges, irregularly arranged and in some cases isolated, interspersed with shallow marshy basins from 10 to 15 feet below the general level. The mounds between in no case rise above the general level. A ready explanation is that they were at first occupied by ice blocks, while débris from the rapidly melting ice sheet buried them and leveled the general surface. In other words, the region is a "pitted plain," with the "pits" unusually large and confluent.

Flowing wells.—A remarkable feature of the region is the existence of flowing wells in the vicinity of Diana and Forestburg. These are invariably obtained by boring through the till, which is about 100 feet in thickness, to a layer of gravel lying underneath. Sometimes thin layers of sand are struck in the till. The flow is abundant and rises to about 15 feet above the surface at Diana. At all points below that level, as far as has yet been found, flowing wells may be obtained. The most trustworthy and explicit accounts were obtained from Mr. C. J. Croninger, of Diana (now called Artesian). Similar conditions are found near Forestburg, but have not been so carefully examined. At Letcher, also, a flowing well was drilled, but the water was obtained from a much lower stratum, probably the Dakota sandstone. It was at a depth of more than 335 feet. This well was a pioneer of the deep artesian wells that now abound in this region. It was drilled about 1884. A description of the well, furnished by Mr. H. M. Hopkins, who had charge of its boring, is as follows:

Well section at Letcher, South Dakota.

1. Deep soil.
2. Yellow clay.
3. Sand, 1 foot.
4. Blue clay, containing a layer of sand 1 foot thick; this extends to a depth of 100 feet.
5. Gravel and quicksand of several feet.
6. Soapstone, 75 feet, with some slate.
7. Sand rock to the bottom, 335 feet deep.

Cause of Lake Dakota.—The reason why this area was not opened at its southern end so as to prevent the accumulation of a body of water may be traced to the configuration of the bottom when left by the ice sheet, and the failure of the ice to excavate toward the south is readily explained by the extension of the red quartzite across its path. This barrier may be conceived to have so checked the ice as to increase the height of its surface and the erosive action below, just as is the case with a stream in similar circumstances. It would have also increased the velocity of subglacial streams, and in this way may have tended to accumulate masses of gravel. The sandy region along its western side, together with the ancient channel, now a marsh, may be referred to the more recent occupation of that side by the stream, or to the currents flowing through when the lake was filling.

Buried wood.—From several localities reports have come of fragments of wood found in wells. But while suspecting that a deposit of this material might be discovered in the lake, after diligent inquiry in several cases, facts were not found to favor such a conclusion. The fragments were isolated, only a few inches in diameter, and occurred at different depths.

Striæ within the moraine.—The region within the second moraine contains extensive exposures of red quartzite which present in a striking manner the abrading action of the ice. In the following table is presented the more striking observations which have been made. At the westernmost exposure of the red quartzite no striæ have been found, and the occurrence of the Dakota sandstone several feet higher in its close vicinity indicates that it was not subject to the action of the ice.

Striæ found within the second moraine.

[Corrected for magnetic variation.]

Locality.	Direction.
Rockport:	
By the schoolhouse at west side of valley	S. 22°-49°-51°-57° E.
Farther east.....	N. 89° E. = S. 78° E. S. 51°-59°-65° E.
Seven miles north of Alexandria	S. 2°-10°-20°-22° E.
Pier Creek, 5 miles north of Alexandria.	S. 14°-17° E.
Wolf Creek, 6 miles east of last.....	S. 8°-12°-17°-22°-29°-32°-37°-42°-49°-57° E.
Wolf Creek, southwest of Bridgewater.	S. 12 W. S. 12°-15°-17°-19°-21°-22°-27°-29°-39° E.

Only one locality is found between the moraines, viz, 2 miles east of Parker, where the direction is S. 52° E.

The exposures in this region are rather extensive, the one at Rockport covering more than a square mile. It affords comparatively few

striæ, because of its weathered character. By far the finest locality for its display of distinct and varied striæ is southwest of Bridgewater, where many are several feet in length (Pl. XVII). They show curves and crooked lines of remarkable form. One was noted 12 feet long, 2 to 3 inches wide, and about one-fourth inch deep. The crescentic cracks are also finely exhibited; a system 18 inches wide and 3 feet

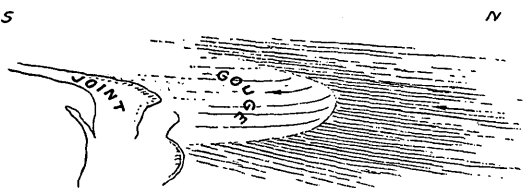


Fig. 30.—A gouge from quartzite exposure, near Bridgewater, South Dakota.



PHOTOGRAPH OF STRIÆ ON QUARTZITE NEAR BRIDGEWATER, SOUTH DAKOTA.

long was noted, and they occur of all sizes from that down to an inch in width. A *roche moutonnée* about 10 feet high and with several nondescript figures pecked upon its surface, stands by the creek near the center of the valley. Toward the westernmost exposure of the quartzite is a peculiar spoonlike gouge in the rock, evidently formed by the ice, at least smoothed and shaped by it. Its edge toward the north is quite complete, sharply defined, and curved like the point of the bowl of a spoon. Its southern edge is lost in the lower surface surrounding. The portion corresponding to the bowl of the spoon is regularly but slightly concave. The outer surface of a surrounding rock rises gently toward the rim before described. The subjoined sketch illustrates it better than words (fig. 30).

CHAPTER V.

TERRACES OF THE MISSOURI AND BIG SIOUX, AND HYDROLOGY OF THE REGION.

These have an important bearing upon the glacial history of the region, as they record more or less clearly the variations in level of streams attending the Glacial epoch and subsequent to it. They form perhaps the clearest evidence attainable in our field concerning the movements of the earth's crust and the meteorological conditions during the epoch. This evidence is the more valuable because it is in great measure independent of glacial deposits.

TERRACES OF THE MISSOURI AND ITS TRIBUTARIES.

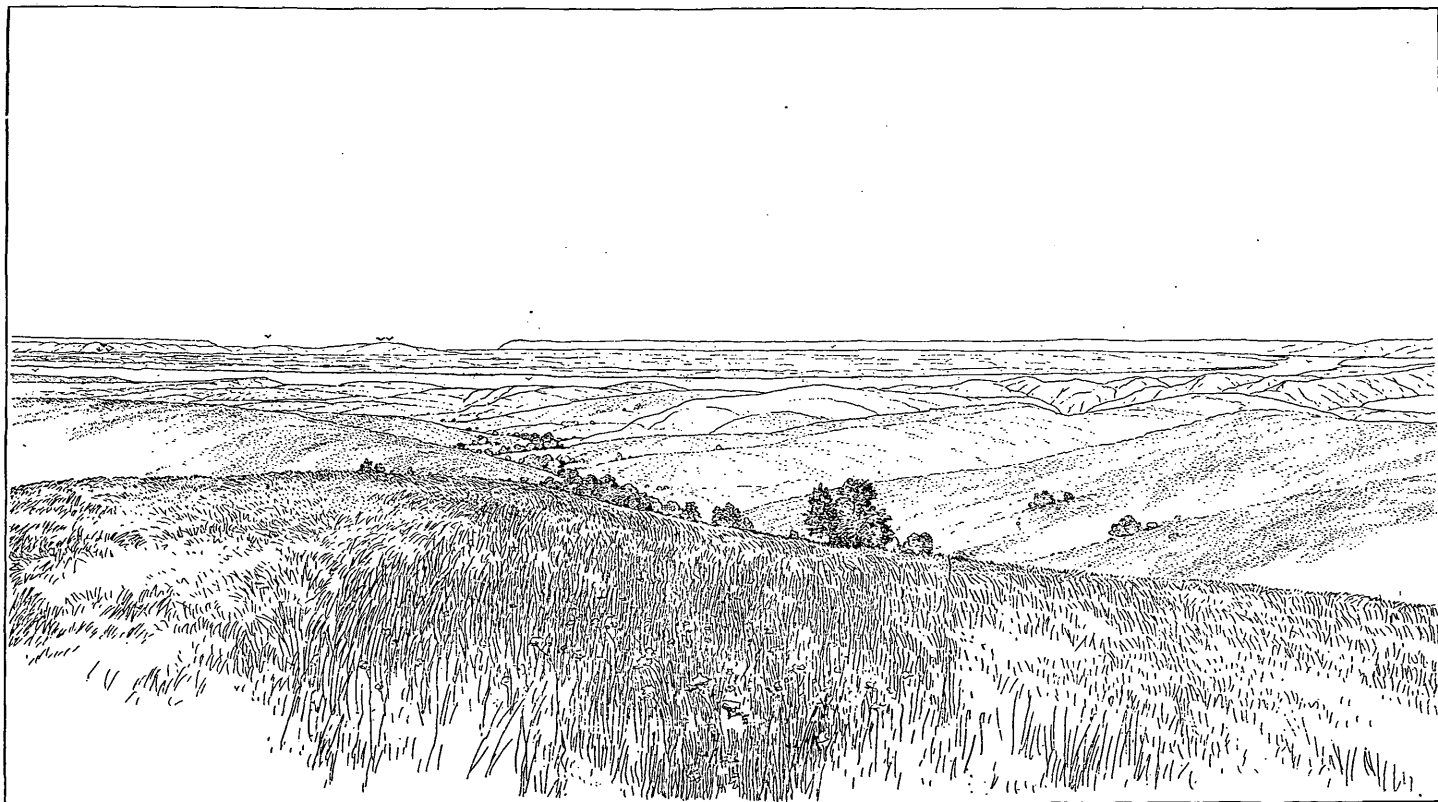
These readily arrange themselves in three groups: The silt terraces, the lower bowldery terraces, and the higher bowldery terraces.

SILT TERRACES.

The silt terraces are chiefly distinguished by the fineness of their material and their markedly lower elevation. They do not rise anywhere higher than 100 feet above the present stream, and are usually much lower. Although covered with silt, they are not entirely composed of it, but often—especially the higher ones—are composed largely of Cretaceous clays in situ.

The survey of this group of terraces has been necessarily very incomplete. The number of observations taken is far from sufficient to prepare the way for a thorough discussion of them. The attention of the writer has been more turned to the bowldery terraces, which are more intimately connected with glacial phenomena. In general it may be said that there are two silt terraces which lie above high-water mark of the present time and which may be traced at most points favorable for their preservation. The difficulty of correlating them arises from their higher elevations in the vicinity of tributaries and the occasional interpolation of subordinate terraces.

At the Great Bend (Pl. XVIII) the higher terrace upon the right side of the river lies from 90 to 100 feet above low water. It is extensively developed in the bend; in fact, with the lower silt terraces it occupies the whole area of the bend north of its neck. This bend describes a circuit of 30 miles, returning to about $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles from its beginning. At this locality is well illustrated the principle that a continually cutting stream forms a slope on the inside of a bend, which shows no break



GREAT BEND OF THE MISSOURI RIVER FROM THE EAST.

vv A neck of Pierre clays, which, if cut through, would shorten the river 20 miles. v Missouri River. vv Bowldery terrace.

unless the course of the stream is at some point turned against it. Hence we find that this upper terrace grades down insensibly to the lower terrace in this slope, which is 7 or 8 miles in length. On the eastern side of the neck, where the measurements already given were taken, the lower silt terrace is from 30 to 70 feet higher than the river, while the present flood plain is only 10 to 18 feet above. On the opposite side of the river the higher terrace extends as a plain from 2 to 3 miles in width from the Great Bend to Crow Creek Agency and beyond. Its elevation above the river at the upper end is from 90 to 108 feet. Near Crow Creek Agency, where Soldier Creek enters from the northeast, it is from nearly 110 to 200 feet, while the bottom lands upon which the agency buildings are located is about 15 feet above the river.

At Chamberlain the lower terrace, upon which the town is built, is well represented, and shows, away from the mouth of American Creek, the Niobrara chalkstone occupying most of its height. It slopes from about 70 to 50 feet. Along its outer edge are a series of short, sandy spurs which rise to 125 feet. They may be part of a delta of American Creek. The lower terrace is narrowly developed along American Creek. Across the river, above Chamberlain, we again find the higher terrace well developed, from 40 to 70 feet in height, and traces of lower terraces also occur.

At Lower Brule Agency a lower terrace, about 45 feet in height, is well developed, the upper terrace being traceable also north of American Crow Creek, and back and south of the agency it is from 60 to 70 feet in height. Lower than the terrace upon which the agency is situated is a narrow flood plain, covered at high water. The higher terrace may be traced down the river as follows: It is faintly developed below the mouth of White River at an elevation of 50 feet. Opposite Brick Kiln Buttes it is narrowly developed and is about 80 feet high. Below the mouth of Snake Creek a high terrace appears sloping from a rather indistinct line about 150 feet above the river down to 50 feet, where it ends in a conspicuous edge. This is probably to be attributed to the rapid cutting down of the lower bowldery terrace through the narrows above Wheeler. At Mill Head Point, about 10 miles above Wheeler and on the opposite side of the river, it is about 75 feet in height. It is traceable north upon the opposite side of the river, and 2 or 3 miles south on the same side. At Wheeler there is a terrace upon which the town is built, about 45 feet above the river. The fine terrace upon which Fort Randall is built is from 30 to 35 feet above the river. At Niobrara the new town is built upon an extensive terrace about 25 feet above the river. No purely silt terraces higher than from 15 to 20 feet are noticed along the river farther south.

The lower terrace is represented again west of Brick Kiln Buttes at 30 feet and at the same level at Rosebud Landing. Below the mouth of Snake Creek it is not represented, unless in a broad bottom sloping from

about 25 feet down to about 10 feet. At Mill Head Point it is sharply shown at 45 feet. At Wheeler a terrace of considerable width rises about 18 feet and continues some distance eastward along the north bank of the river. A similar terrace, though narrowly developed, rises about 15 feet at Fort Randall, and is much wider on the opposite side of the river at White Swan. Farther down this seems to disappear or to be indistinguishable from the flood plain, which at Niobrara rises from 10 to 15 feet above the river, and about the same height farther down. This lower terrace is almost purely sand and dark loam; the higher terrace, as before stated, frequently has a Cretaceous base, and at some points, as at Wheeler and Fort Randall, considerable gravel and boulderets are found in its lower portion.

LOWER BOWLDERY TERRACES.

Just north of the narrowest portion of the Great Bend rises a high, broad, butte-like hill. To the north it is bounded by the silt terrace already described. At the south a low ragged ridge of Cretaceous clays connects it with the main bank. Its surface, where least eroded, is quite even. It rises 235 feet above the river. Its whole upper surface is covered with boulders and gravel mixed with yellow clay.

With a glass the hills to the northwest across the river were discovered to be also boulder clad. Upon the east side of the bend the highland, curving sharply up against the river, shows no drift. No trace of bowldery hills similar to the one described is found till Soldier Creek is crossed, north of Crow Creek Agency. There a range begins which extends southeast across Campbells and Elm creeks to the vicinity of Crow Creek. These hills are more or less detached from the highlands north by erosion. East of Campbells Creek they rise to 320 feet above the river. A well-defined bowldery terrace was noticed along Boxelder Creek 12 miles farther east, rising to the height of 125 feet above the stream. It is estimated to be 15 or 25 feet above the bowldery terrace east of Campbells Creek. South of that point this terrace is remarkably developed about the junction of Boxelder Creek with Crow Creek. It was also examined between the lower courses of Crow and Smith creeks, where it is mostly a barren plain of gravel.

In the vicinity of Chamberlain the extensive series of old channels and terraces which have been noticed in our consideration of the Red Lake region are found at a height of 200 feet above the river. This includes an old channel cutting across the northwest corner of T. 103, R. 71, leaving an ancient island west of it, and also the channel from American Creek southwest to the Missouri, in which lies Red Lake, (Pl. XV). At about the same level is a broad, well-developed terrace lying along the north bank of the Missouri for 2 or 3 miles above its junction with White River. Along American Creek above Pukwana is an old lake bed at the same altitude, which is probably a portion of the old Red Lake channel. The terraces and channels show much gravel in

their upper portion, though covered with 10 or 15 feet of loess-like silt. An imperfect exposure in a ravine northeast of Ancient Island before mentioned, which is opposite Lower Brule Agency, is as follows:

Exposure northeast of Ancient Island, South Dakota.

	Ft.	In.
Gravel and sand, horizontally stratified	8	0
Laminated clay, showing ripple marks	1	2
Gravel and sand, arranged in short crescentic patches, showing oblique stratification (torrential)	10	0

This exposure is about 50 feet below the bottom of the old valley, and does not, therefore, include the covering of silt observed elsewhere.

In the vicinity of Chamberlain, also, the prevalent altitude of the bluffs along the river is from 325 to 350 feet. Their tops are quite uniform and little eroded. They are capped with 40 to 50 feet of drift, which passes into a layer of loess probably from 5 to 15 feet in thickness. The bluffs, across the river especially, have the appearance of a terrace. North of American Crow Creek a bed of gravel was found capping the edge of the terrace-like bluff 315 feet above the Missouri. It corresponds in level to the gravelly drift already mentioned as quite extensive on the south side of that stream. The top of Ancient Island, opposite Lower Brule Agency, rises 300 feet above the river. Between the lower course of the White River and the Missouri extends a silt-covered plain which averages about the same elevation. A terrace occupying the first bend in the Missouri to the south, and also a portion of the second in the same direction, is estimated to be at the same altitude. The lower gravelly plain south of White River seems to be only a little more elevated (350 to 400 feet), and probably belongs to the same formation. Perhaps some of it is a little more ancient.

Along the narrow channel directly southwest of the Bijou Hills I failed to observe any trace of this terrace, but west and northwest, back of the silt terrace already mentioned, it is widely developed as a sloping terrace from 95 to 175 feet high. It presents the usual features of 10 or 15 feet of loess-like silt above a heavy deposit of bowlders and gravel. In the valley of Pratt Creek, near its mouth, and developed extensively along the Missouri, is a boulder-topped terrace 330 to 360 feet above the latter. A view of it from the south led to the belief that it was originally connected with a high terrace at Mill Head Point, which rises 250 feet above the river and rapidly declines toward the south. This latter terrace exhibits a remarkable quantity of bowlders in its upper portion, the coarseness of material apparently diminishing down the stream. Its structure is finely shown by a ravine crossing it a little below Mill Head Point. Its upper surface was originally covered with 10 to 15 feet of loess-like silt, which has been removed near the edges and along the ravines.

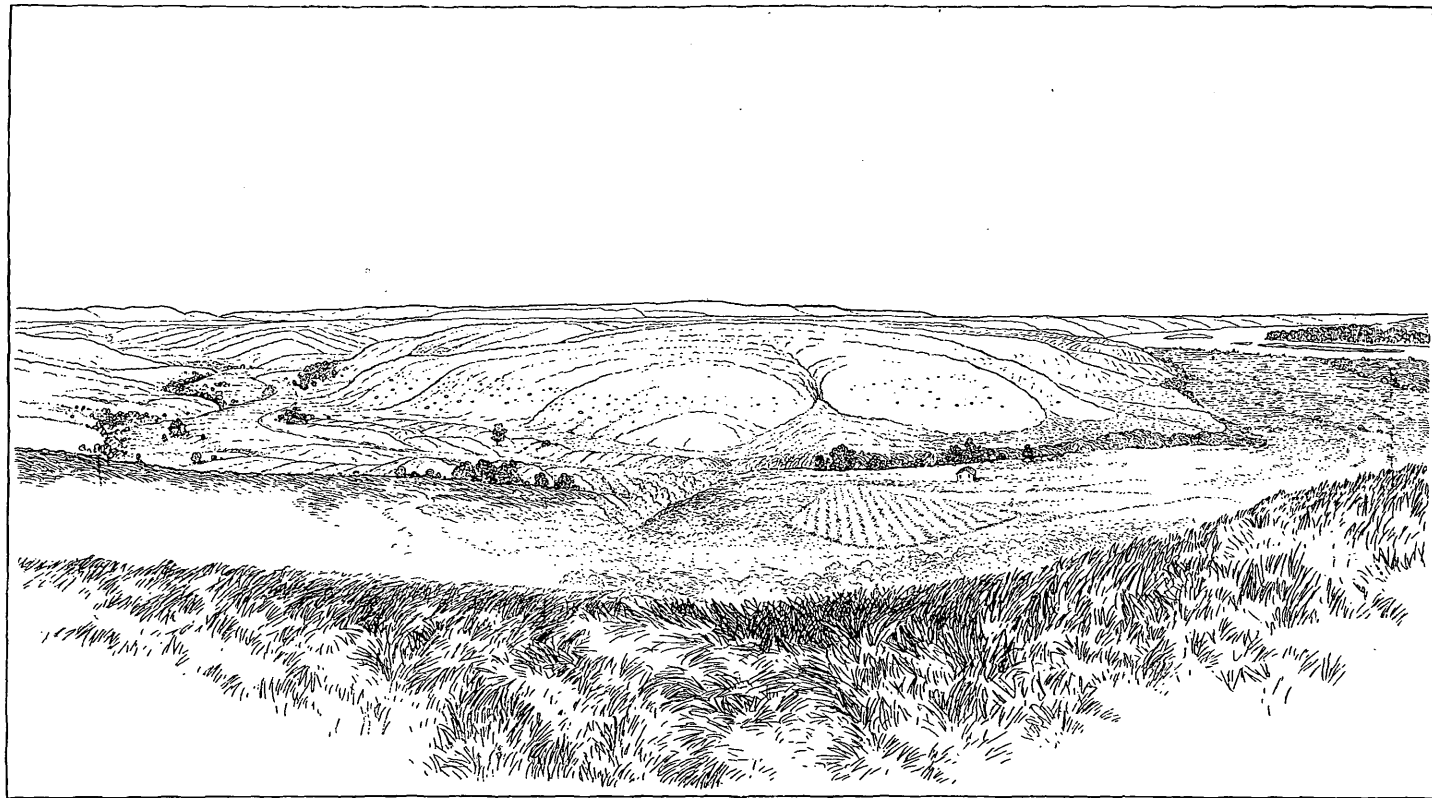
At Mill Head Point there is an extensive boulder bar, reaching well out into the river, which at that point runs like a mill race. I was

informed that the river survey developed the fact that the river about 2 miles north of Wheeler was paved with bowlders.

Back of Wheeler is a broad terrace rising at its southern edge about 150 feet above the river. This presents a deep gravel bed, with bowlders in its upper portion and covered with loess-like silt about 10 or 15 feet in depth. North of Fort Randall, at the junction of the Andes Lake Outlet with the Missouri, a broad, sloping terrace lies at an altitude of 120 feet at its inner edge (PL. XIX). Farther back it connects with the mouth of Andes Lake Outlet at the altitude of 200 feet. In this terrace the Cretaceous shales rise to the height of 90 feet. At Greenwood the terrace upon the north side of the river at its edge rises to an altitude of about 180 feet, presenting characters similar to those already mentioned. This terrace continues, with a breadth of from 2 to 4 miles, along the north side of the Missouri to the mouth of Choteau Creek. It presents a beautiful fertile plain, quite even except where traversed by the three or four creeks which flow in deep, narrow valleys. The edge of the terrace back of Greenwood is 175 feet high; east of the creek near by, 140 feet, and 6 or 7 miles east in a similar locality, 200 feet. The remote edge of the plain east of Grass Lake Outlet is 240 feet, and about 5 miles northeast of Greenwood, where the ancient bank rises abruptly 75 feet above it, it is 250 feet above the river to the south (PL. XX). North of Running Water this terrace fills the bend in the Missouri from the mouth of the Niobrara to Springfield, with an altitude quite uniformly of 200 feet. It constitutes the first bench north of the town of Niobrara, more than a mile in width, and is continued up the Niobrara River, first in the sharp south bend near its mouth, then extensively on the south side of the river up for 15 or 20 miles. This terrace is also well developed along the east side of Bazile Creek.

Farther east, along the south side of the Missouri, the surface has been so modified by erosion that little trace of terrace formation could be expected and none was noticed. In the valley of Weigandt Creek southeast of Herrick, Nebraska, there is an extensive terraced surface rising at some points about 325 feet above the Missouri. There was much difficulty, when first examined, in correlating it with other deposits along the Missouri. But further study led to the satisfactory conclusion that it was formed by Weigandt Creek and its tributaries. It rises from 175 to 200 feet above that stream. It presents the usual features of a gravelly terrace, with the silt covering scantily formed. Similar deposits are found along the neighboring stream, called Beaver Creek.

At Yankton, on the north side of the river, the outer slope of the moraine, as was noticed in the valley northwest of the town, is quite gravelly about 130 feet above the river. Passing north from Yankton 3 or 4 miles, we reach a broad terrace south of another of the numerous Beaver creeks. This is at an altitude of 120 feet above the river and connects with the broad valley south of Lesterville. Though the



LOWER BOWLDERY TERRACE, OPPOSITE FORT RANDALL.

terrace seems mostly covered with pebble clay or loess-like silt, on the slope south of Utica considerable gravel was noticed.

At Vermilion the principal terrace, which is 6 or 7 miles wide and extends eastward to the Big Sioux, is about 80 feet above the river. It shows its structure to be pebble clay, with its upper surface eroded and capped with silt.

Below the mouth of Floyd River, near Sioux City, is a terrace 115 to 150 feet high. It is composed of coarse sand below and of loess-like silt in the upper two-thirds; no boulders.

In the vicinity of Herman, Nebraska, a terrace begins which continues past Blair to De Soto, about 10 miles in length and in places nearly 2 miles in breadth. This rises 100 feet above the river. At Fort Calhoun a similar terrace extends 5 or 6 miles. An obscure one about 60 feet in height is found at Omaha. At Bellevue, north of the mouth of the Papillion River, is another well-developed terrace from 60 to 70 feet above the river, and a similar one is found below the mouth of the Weeping Water at Wyoming.

We have already briefly described the extensive terraces along the Platte and Elkhorn rivers which rise to a level of 80 feet near their junction.

The valley of the White River approaches that of the Missouri in size, and is likewise mostly excavated from the Cretaceous clays. The alluvial bottoms rising about 20 feet from the bottom of the river form a more prominent feature, usually occupying most of the space in the deep bends in the river. Rising abruptly from this alluvial plain are bluffs of shaly clay over 100 feet in height. At an altitude of about 130 feet is a well-defined gravelly terrace containing mostly western gravel. This seems to be excavated out of the Cretaceous, which appears again back of it and rises abruptly to the edge of a higher terrace about 200 feet above the stream. This terrace in one place shows alluvial deposits 30 or 40 feet in depth, exhibiting loess-like silt below, including about its middle a dark carbonaceous layer like an old soil. It is capped above, first with gravel, then with bowldery clay, which slopes with a gentle rise backward from the river to a height of about 260 feet. At the height of about 325 feet another gravelly terrace appears, containing northern erratics and limestone and granite bowlders like the last. This seems to be continuous with the sheet of gravel south of the river, which has already been described.

COMPOSITION OF LOWER BOWLDERY TERRACES.

Thus far we have treated only of the external appearances of the lower bowldery terraces. We now proceed to give what light has been found concerning their internal structure and composition. There has already been given an imperfect section, which is found opposite the Lower Brule Agency. Apparently, although not certainly, the pre-

vailing structure is somewhat as follows: Ten to 15 feet of silt, passing abruptly into stratified sand and gravel, which is coarse and bowldery near the top, and finer and more evenly stratified below, the depth of the sand corresponding to the inequalities of the deposits below. In some cases the upper portion of the gravel is more or less occupied with till of reddish or yellowish color.

At White Swan and below, the Niobrara chalkstone and Pierre clays rise over 100 feet, forming a very substantial base for the terrace. Above these there seems to be a heavy body of till, but it is nowhere well exposed. Seven miles east of Greenwood the Cretaceous clays appear to rise over 150 feet, and shallow exposures exhibit red till above for 30 or 40 feet, and a mantle of silt of variable thickness over the whole. Between that point and the mouth of Choteau Creek the terrace is much eroded, but little or no trace of sand is found. The phenomena of soil and topography seem best explained by supposing that the body of the terrace is largely composed of Pierre clay.

Opposite Niobrara is a very complete exposure of the terrace, which is as follows:

Exposure opposite Niobrara, Nebraska.

	Feet.
Loess-like silt.....	10-12
Red clay, imperfectly stratified, which abounds in pebbles and bowlders.....	35
Fine sand, thinly stratified, with no trace of northern erratics.....	55
Imperfectly exposed	45
Niobrara chalkstone	70
Level of the river.	

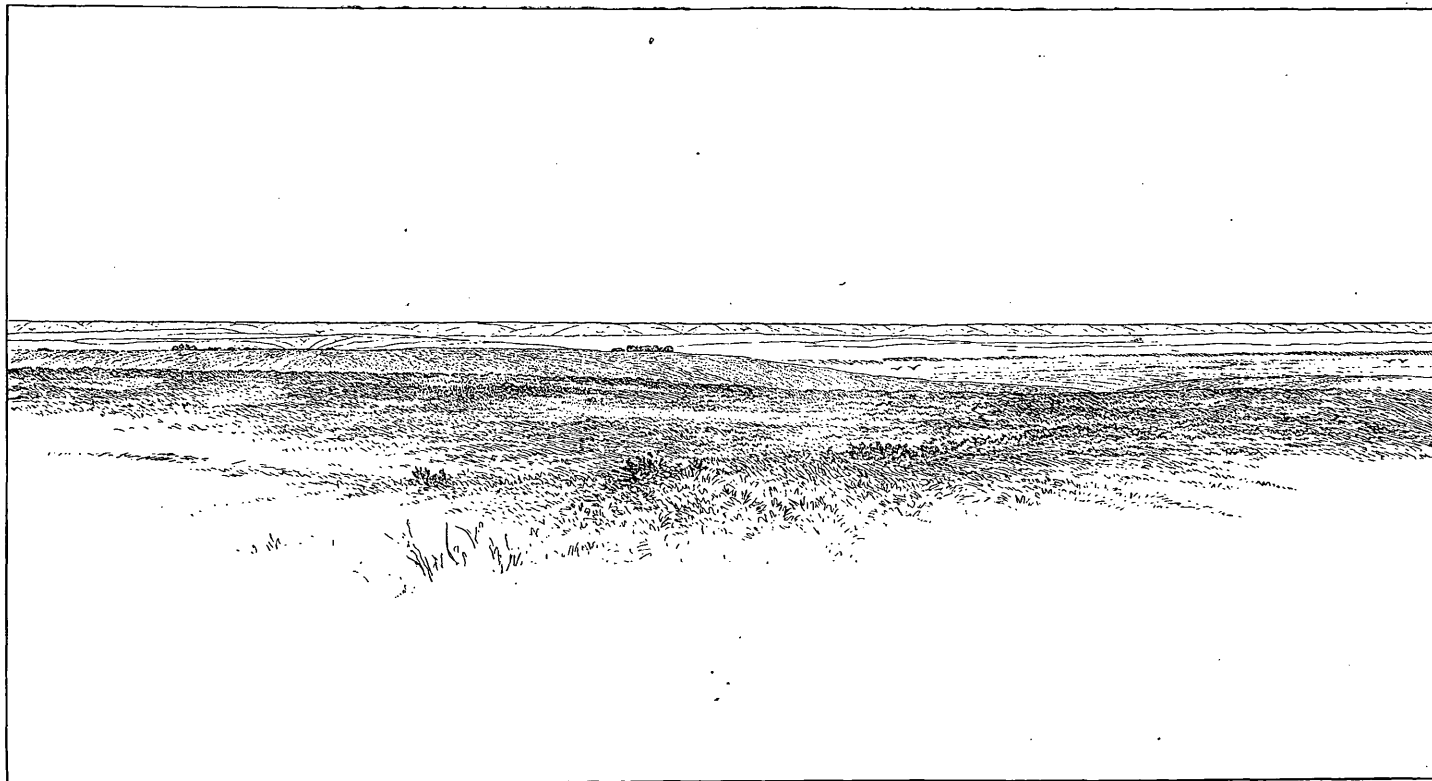
The sand in this section seems identical in structure and composition with that observed at the Devils Nest and north of Coleridge. While there it is at an altitude of from 350 to 400 feet above the river, here it is below 150 feet. Still, its freedom from northern erratics would seem to indicate its pre-Glacial deposition. Moreover, it has less altitude than the Cretaceous rocks in this same terrace farther west, and the red clay at this point seems to correspond to that at Greenwood, both in altitude and in time of deposition. On the whole, therefore, it seems not improbable that the sand was deposited by the Niobrara, possibly in Lake Cheyenne, before the advent of the drift.

At Vermilion a combined section is as follows:

Section at Vermilion, South Dakota.

	Feet.
Loess-like silt, straticulate.....	15-20
Till, eroded on top, yellow and compact above, and composed of irregular patches of gravel, sand, and red and blue till below.....	40-50
Unexposed	20
Level of the river.	

This composition may be referred to material brought down by the Vermilion River, at first laden with ice blocks, or in part to the direct action of the extension of the Vermilion lobe of the ice sheet. On either supposition a deep preglacial valley at this point must be postulated.



LOWER BOWLDERY TERRACE, FROM THE OLD BANK NORTH OF GREENWOOD, SOUTH DAKOTA

v v Missouri River. v v Broad, shallow, channel-like slough.

Three miles southeast of Blair the structure of the terrace is finely exposed in a number of deep ravines which cut through two-thirds of its height. They show nothing but rearranged loess, with an occasional thin streak of gravel in its lower portion. A similar composition is evidently true of the terrace at Fort Calhoun and also at Bellevue, except that its base is occupied by Carboniferous limestone. In each case the composition is referred to the numerous high loess bluffs in the close vicinity and along the river above, with comparative absence of drift.

The terraces along the Platte and Elkhorn have apparently very uniform structure, which consists first of silt, then of fine sand, passing below into fine sand and gravel. The evidence from deep driven wells shows that below the first gravel is a thick continuous layer of clay, below which is another heavy deposit of gravel. These lower layers extend underneath the whole valley so far as is known. Northwest of Fremont an exposure showed as follows:

Exposure northwest of Fremont, Nebraska.

	Feet.
Loess-like silt	30-40
Fine sand.....	30-40
Unexposed.....	20
Level of bottom land, which is probably 10 to 20 feet above the level of the river.	

North of North Bend was found from 5 to 15 feet of silt, according to the undulations of the surface, and sand rising from 75 to 80 feet above the river. The upper surface of the terrace shows gouges and imperfect channels, as if formed by strong currents.

From the foregoing presentation, particularly if reference is made to the table on a subsequent page, it appears that, above the narrows above Wheeler, there are two series of terraces mentioned under this head, one 100 to 150 feet above the other; also, that they come together below Wheeler. That they do not mark stages of the river as widely separated as their altitudes might seem to indicate may be inferred from the following considerations: The lower seems in places to be continuous with the bottom of old channels, as that of Red Lake, and east of Ancient Island, as though it corresponded to the bottom of a stream, while the upper series seems to slope gradually up into the surrounding country, as though it might mark the margin or flood plain of the ancient stream.

HIGHER BOWLDERY TERRACES.

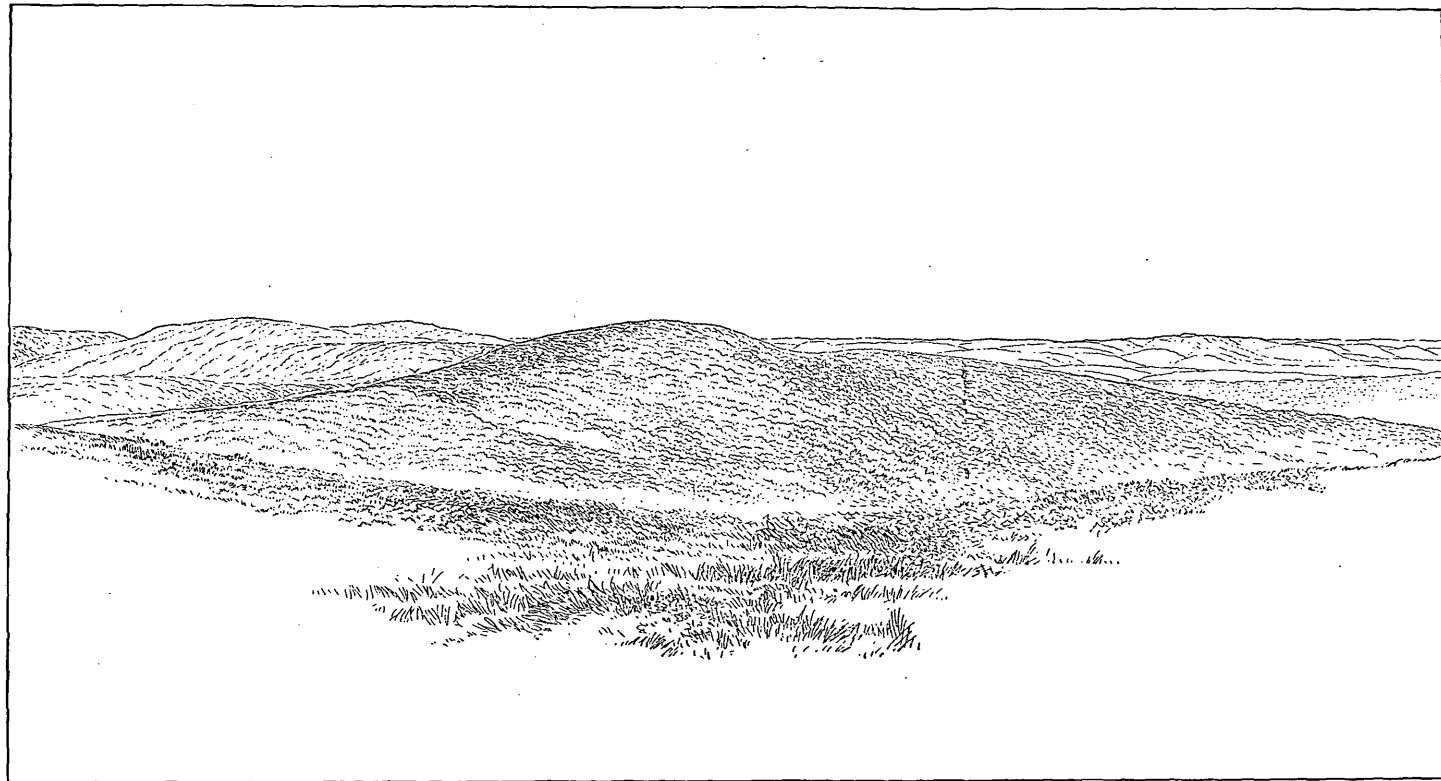
These are the least easily recognized of all. This is not surprising when we remember that they are much the most ancient. Their high elevation, together with the unusually loose character of the strata upon which they rest, lead to the same result. Moreover, if the river was largely lacustrine when they were formed, as we are disposed to believe, its existence will only occasionally be evidenced by deposits adjacent to the present stream. They may have the various forms of

beach or bar and delta as well as river terrace, according to circumstances. Little time has been given to their study, and the few observations incidentally made are given for what they may be worth.

Near the summit of the high hill south of the Red Lake Outlet, on the side next to the Missouri, gravelly deposits were noticed at the altitude of a little more than 425 feet, which may be correlated with the higher portion of the gravelly plain just mentioned. Along Snake Creek, near its mouth, an extensive sloping terrace is found, with its usual bowldery gravel covered with silt and rising 330 to 417 feet above the river. Besides these in the Red Lake region, we have nothing to suggest a terrace deposit below the trace of a water level around the Bijou Hills and the bowldery and gravel-topped hills 5 or 6 miles southwest of the mouth of White River, which are believed to mark the highest reach of the Missouri since its beginning.

Five or 6 miles east of Wheeler the outer face of the moraine shows, at the different points, the gravelly edge of a terrace at an altitude of over 400 feet. At Fort Randall, on the south side of the river, is a well-defined terrace, with its inner edge having an altitude of 415 feet. Northeast of Fort Randall, near the moraine, is a similar well-defined edge of a terrace 420 feet above the river, which slopes gently up to 450 feet. On the north side of the river northeast of Greenwood the surface is too low to exhibit any trace of a water line at this level. Opposite the mouth of the Niobrara the outer surface of the hill which forms a fragment of the moraine shows, a little below the summit, abundant gravel and sand at an altitude of about 400 feet above the river.

Between the Niobrara and Bazile Creek and along the Missouri east of the Bazile is found a wonderful development of gravel capping the older deposits in a terrace-like form at an altitude of 415 to 475 feet above the river (Pl. XXI). It is observed to extend several miles south, and, as has been described under the head of the loess region, there is abundant evidence to show that this gravel formation extends underneath the loess indefinitely. It may not be called a terrace, yet the gravel exposed along the north edge of the loess, between it and the fine sand below, seems probably to belong for the most part or entirely to the same formation as the terrace described. Toward the east side of the Santee Reservation the gravel seems to have been separated into an upper and a lower member. The lower portion extends like an eroded terrace at the height of 390 feet. We have provisionally ascribed this phenomenon, on another page, to undermining. It will be remembered that this gravelly drift extends, with declining elevation, nearly to Dixon County. So far as has yet been discovered no trace of terrace at a corresponding altitude has been noticed below that point. It corresponds in elevation with gravel beds observed several miles up the Niobrara and with another near Plainview, Nebraska. Both of these show only western gravel.



UPPER BOWLDERY TERRACE SOUTHWEST OF SANTEE AGENCY, NEBRASKA.

v v Volcanic ashes in road.

Table of heights of the terraces along the Missouri from the Great Bend southward.

[r indicates the right bank, and l the left.]

Locality.	Silt terraces.	Lower bowl- dery terraces.	Higher bowl- dery terraces.
	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
In the Great Bend <i>r</i>	10, 18, 30-70, 90-100	235	.....
East of the Great Bend <i>r</i>	90-100	.....	.....
Crow Creek Agency <i>l</i>	15, 110-150	200-250, 320	.....
Two miles above Chamberlain <i>r</i>	8-10, 30-70	325	.....
Chamberlain.....	15-30, 50-80, 120-125	325	.....
Three miles south of Chamber- lain <i>l</i>	75-80	200, 350	.....
North of American Crow Creek <i>r</i>	<i>a</i> 70-80	315-320	.....
Lower Brule Agency <i>r</i>	10, 20-40, 60-70	.....	.....
Ancient Island <i>l</i>.....	.....	200, 300	.....
Above mouth of White River <i>r</i>	<i>a</i> 50	300	.....
South of mouth of White River <i>r</i>	<i>a</i> 10	250	350-400 510
South of Red Lake Outlet <i>l</i>.....	.....	<i>a</i> 200	450-460
West of Brick Kiln Butter.....	15, 30-50	90-175	.....
Bijou Hills <i>l</i>.....	.....	.....	590
Rose Bud Landing <i>r</i>	15-20, 65-75	.....	.....
Near mouth of Snake Creek <i>l</i>	10, 20, 50-150	330	417
Near mouth of Pratt Creek <i>l</i>	90-126	300-350	.....
Mill Head Point <i>r</i>	45, 85	200-250	.....
Wheeler <i>l</i>	5, 9-18, 45, 85-105	<i>a</i> 135-175	.....
Four miles east of Wheeler <i>l</i>	40-75	.....	410-430
Andes Outlet <i>l</i>	<i>a</i> 10, 25	125-190	350
Fort Randall <i>r</i>	15, 30, 40-45	.....	415
Greenwood <i>r</i>.....	.....	180-240	.....
6 miles east of Greenwood <i>l</i>.....	.....	200-250	.....
Opposite Niobrara <i>l</i>.....	.....	200	<i>a</i> 400
Niobrara <i>r</i>	5, 10, 20	180-210	415-450
Devils Nest <i>l</i>	10, 30	.....	450-475
Yankton <i>r</i>	10, 25, 70	120-140	.....
Vermilion <i>l</i>	10-15, 20-25	80-100	.....
Blair <i>r</i>	10-20	90-110	.....
Calhoun <i>r</i>	<i>a</i> 10	<i>a</i> 100	.....
Bellevue.....	<i>a</i> 10, 20	50-70	.....

a Estimated.

The different levels under the head of "lower bowldery terraces" probably do not mark two stages of the Missouri, widely separated, as might be inferred, for the upper one appears to have been marking generally the surface or flood plain of the river, while the lower in many cases seems from its configuration in some places to record the bottom of the stream.

TERRACES ALONG THE BIG SIOUX.

As the Big Sioux is the counterpart of the Missouri in its relation to the moraine, so we should reasonably expect a system of terraces along it resembling that already described along the Missouri. From its lower altitude, more open valley, and less volume of water, we are prepared to anticipate lower floods and less corrosion, and consequently less difference in altitude between the terraces. Another important circumstance acting in the same direction is found in the greater hardness of rocks over which it flows. But without anticipating too much, we will proceed to examine the few traces of terraces which have been noted. It should also be acknowledged that the examination of this stream has not been so complete as in the case of the Missouri.

Above Sioux Falls the depth of the immediate valley of the Big Sioux is from 80 to 100 feet below the adjoining hills. Its sides are less abrupt, and the whole appearance is that of a stream in its middle course. This may be explained by the check given to its erosion by the ledge of Sioux Falls and higher up by the rock at Dell Rapids.

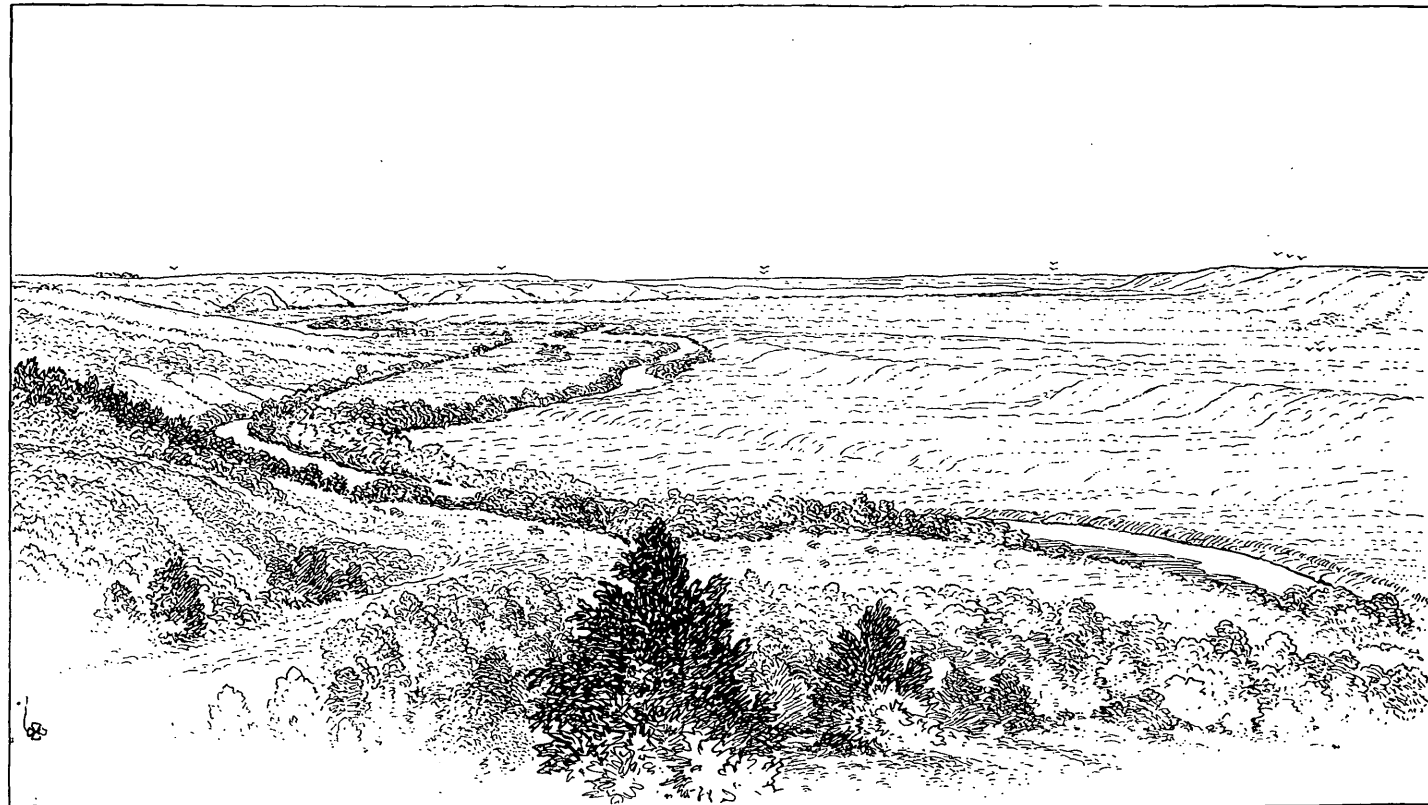
SILT AND LOWER BOWLDERY TERRACES.

At Egan, besides the immediate flood plain, which is quite low, is a terrace along the north side of the valley with its inner edge about 30 feet above the stream. About a mile and a half northeast of Egan, in the edge of a gravelly terrace, the following section was noticed, beginning 30 feet above the river:

Section northeast of Egan, South Dakota.

	Feet.
Soil	1½
Loess-like clay, with small pebbles and chalky points	1
Roughly and indistinctly stratified gravel, its upper half clayey, yellowish tint; lower, more sandy	7½
Coarse sand, with scattered pebbles, obliquely stratified, in eight layers from 1 to 8 inches in thickness.....	5½

At Sioux Falls, as has been before stated, there is a very gravelly terrace extending from near the top of the falls down the river to the vicinity of Brandon, which is shown by railroad levels to be about 80 feet above the stream at that point. A little below the mouth of Split Rock River the elevation of the wide bottom along the east side of the Big Sioux is from 35 to 50 feet above the stream. Its altitude here is possibly due to ledges of red quartzite exposed a short distance below. At Kruger's mill, about 6 miles northeast of Canton, the terrace lies on both sides, but best developed on the east side, about 50 feet above the stream, and presents an interesting deposit of sand and gravel in its upper portion. The gravel presents the flow-and-plunge structure, and through it a fault was noted of a few inches throw extending vertically. At Canton several alluvial terrace edges are shown along the sides of



BIG SIOUX RIVER NEAR FAIRVIEW, SOUTH DAKOTA.

v Principal moraine. √ Plain inside. vvv Higher bowldery terrace. √vv Lower bowldery terrace.

the valley. There are but two, however, that are clearly distinct; the first is from 10 to 20 feet above the stream, the second about 40 feet. The edge of the plain northwest shows a terrace edge, usually with much gravel at exposed points. This is about 125 feet above the stream.

In the narrow portion of the valley between Beloit and Fairview (Pl. XXII) is found a very interesting terrace of unusually bowldery character, which seems to correspond with the plain northwest and just north of the north end of the moraine, which occupies Highland Township. This plain, it will be remembered, corresponds in height with, or is a continuation of, the plain west of Canton, upon which Worthing and Lenox are situated. This terrace, 2 miles northwest of Fairview, is about 90 feet above the stream, and presents a furrowed appearance, as though eroded by streams flowing in the same direction as the present stream. These furrows and low places correspond with a second terrace, which is about 45 feet above the river. Opposite Fairview the whole surface has declined to that altitude. Back of Fairview a faint terrace edge was noticed at a height of 50 feet. Northeast of Austin this same high terrace is traced, presenting similar characters, at an altitude of 60 to 75 feet above the stream. Just north of Hudson, on the west side of the Big Sioux, is a gravelly terrace utilized by the railroad company as a gravel bed. Its upper surface is about 60 feet above the stream. The surface of this terrace appears to decline rapidly toward the south. It is not difficult to correlate this series of terraces with the lower bowldery terraces along the Missouri. A well-developed gravelly terrace is found on the south side of the valley above Lake Madison, rising about 80 feet above the lake, and along east of Skunk Creek, southwest of Dell Rapids, a terrace, apparently of silt, rises to the height of 40 feet.

HIGHER BOWLDERY TERRACES.

The first and most remarkable examples of these are the high gravel hills northeast of Sioux Falls which, as was stated on a preceding page, rise about 210 feet above the stream. Near Kruger's mill, it will be remembered, there is a high terrace, with its inner edge about 160 feet in height, while farther south an exposure showed a stratified structure like that of a terrace at the height of 108 feet, and a gravelly line at a height of 180 feet. West of the stream a very bowldery edge, like that of a terrace, was noticed at a height of 120 feet, which is a little above the plain west. East of Canton the gravelly deposits shown in railroad cuts extended from about 100 to 175 feet above the stream. North of Fairview, and also east of the same place, a gravelly edge appears on the side of the bluffs at the height of from 200 to 220 feet. West of Calliope the hilltops, which are doubtfully referred to a terrace, are about 125 feet above the stream.

TERRACES ALONG OTHER STREAMS.

There are few other streams in the field under consideration which are outside of the moraine. Those of this class in Iowa have not been studied with care, but most of them show high terraces of silt—second bottoms, as they are popularly called—which often serve as favorable locations for towns.

Striking examples of prominent terraces corresponding to those along the Platte and the Missouri below Sioux City have been noted along the Boyer at Dunlap and Logan, the Nishnabotany at Harlan and Atlantic, the Little Sioux at Cherokee, etc.

PRESENT SLOPES OF THE MISSOURI AND BIG SIOUX.

From railroad levels and the Government survey of the Missouri we obtain the following:

<i>Low-water slopes of the Missouri and the Big Sioux.</i>	
Missouri:	Feet per mile.
Pierre to Chamberlain	0.97
Chamberlain to Niobrara .....	.93
Niobrara to Yankton	1.02
Yankton to Sioux City .....	.90
Sioux City to Blair .....	.87
Blair to Omaha .....	.81
Omaha to Plattsmouth .....	.71
Plattsmouth to Nebraska City	1.06
Big Sioux:	
Flandreau to Dell Rapids	2.26
Dell Rapids to Sioux Falls	3.46
Brandon to Hawarden	2.25
Hawarden to Sioux City	1.00

AGE OF THE TERRACES.

If we accept the prevalent view that the outer moraine marks the maximum extent of the ice in the second Glacial epoch and that the formations outside belong to an earlier epoch, it readily follows that what we have grouped under the head of "lower bowldery terraces" belong to the later time. Their fresh contour and their relation to the loess and extra morainic drift all harmonize with this view. Looking further, the twofold grouping of these terraces would correspond well to the outer and second moraines. The lower terraces would as easily be referred to the times of the third, fourth, and later moraines. Their silty character would result from their remoteness from the glaciers, much as is found to be true of the higher terraces below Sioux City, when the river had left the vicinity of the ice during its earlier and greater extension.

The higher bowldery terraces, according to the scheme adopted, would be referred to a time preceding the loess, probably the first subepoch of the earlier epoch.

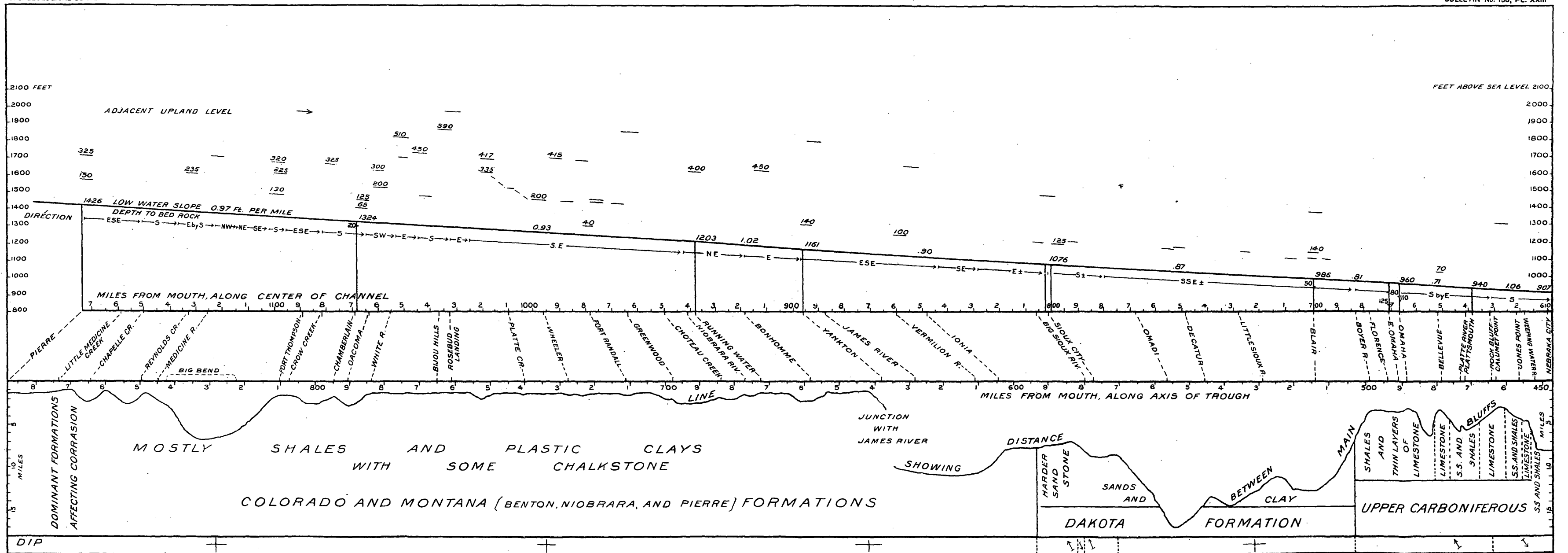


DIAGRAM OF MAIN FEATURES OF THE TROUGH OF THE MISSOURI

More careful study of the terraces, especially after artificial exposures have been multiplied by the settlement of the country, promises to be one of the most interesting and instructive fields in Pleistocene geology. The above is only a beginning of what may be done.

DIAGRAM OF THE TROUGH OF THE MISSOURI.

We have subjoined a diagram (Pl. XXIII) showing graphically the slope, width, depth, terraces, etc., of the trough of the Missouri River from Pierre to Nebraska City. Its data are derived from the reports of the Missouri River Commission, railroad levels, and personal observations. Two things of interest are specially notable: One, the difference in width above Yankton as compared with the portion below that point; the other, the close correspondence between the width of the trough and the softness of the geological strata corraded. The remarkable width of the trough from Sioux City to Blair is probably largely due to the assistance of escaping artesian waters from the Dakota formation.

A similar diagram, somewhat abridged, showing similar facts for the Missouri below Nebraska City, may be found in Report of Missouri Geological Survey, Vol. X, 1896, p. 188.

WESTWARD ELEVATION OF THE REGION.

We have referred several times to a possible recent westward elevation of the region under consideration. We will now consider facts which bear upon its amount, extent, and age. These will be of value, even if not found decisive.

Along the line between Mitchell and Chamberlain the slope of the surface, where it is unaffected by local erosion, descends toward the east about 10 feet to the mile. This we may refer partly to the action of the ice sheet; but comparing it with the opposite side of the valley there is left a considerable amount to be explained by some other cause than the erosion of the ice. Farther south we find the same slope prevailing between Pratt Creek and the James River. We even find that the plain between the Big Sioux and the Vermilion east of Parker is 50 to 75 feet lower than the plain between the West Vermilion and Wolf Creek west of that place. The determination of the prevalent slope farther south in Dakota is rendered difficult by the occurrence of interlobular portions of the moraine. If we refer to the table of elevations along the moraine given in our first chapter we find them harmonizing with the idea of a considerable westward elevation.

Passing now into Nebraska we find, it will be remembered, the surface composed mostly of loess, which in its westward portion presents a clearly defined and quite recognizable plateau. Upon this we may take a number of elevations which will indicate very satisfactorily the general slope of the country. Farther east, with a little care, the original or prevalent level of the loess may be determined from the few

isolated remnants which appear to be the original surface. The following table presents the results of such determinations along lines extending east and west. The figures may be more relied upon in the western portion of the field because more closely connected with railroad elevations. In the eastern portion, though largely barometric, it is believed that they have need of only slight correction.

Slope in eastern Nebraska.

Locality.	Distance.		Slope per mile.
	Miles.	Feet.	
Kimball to Mitchell	48	10	
Northside to Emerson, Nebraska.....	30	6.6	
Oakdale to Wisner (Elkhorn Valley).....	57	5.9	
Humphreys to Blair	70	5.5	
Platte Center to Mapleville.....	40	6.3	
Mapleville to Blair	30	2.7	
Columbus to Fremont (Platte Valley).....	47	5.5	
Aurora to Utica	36	5.9	
Hastings to Dorchester	68	6.5	
Patterson to Sheldon, Iowa	14	1.5	
Akron to Marcus, Iowa	33	1.6	
South of Hillsdale to Creston.....	70	0	

From this we learn: (1) That the James Valley and the Missouri below their junction mark approximately the axis west of which the western elevation is much more marked, averaging about 6 feet per mile. (2) That the slope east of that line is very slight, if anything. It amounts to about 1 foot per mile in northern Iowa, and may possibly be found to be less, for our observations are quite limited. Another reason for doubt lies in the fact that the elevation of the eastern edge of the loess has not been definitely determined, but it can not vary greatly from the figures given. (3) That the slope diminishes rapidly as it approaches the Missouri in eastern Nebraska, as is indicated by the slope between Mapleville and Blair.

A general view of the change of slope indicates that its axis follows approximately the boundary between the Cretaceous rocks and the older rocks. The Archean quartzites of Dakota seem to have been least affected. This axis, which is the eastern limit of the steeper westward acclivity north of our field, continues apparently up the James River through Brown County and then curving eastward around the head of Coteau des Prairies, extends into the valley of the Red River.

Date.—1. The relations of the drift to the volcanic ash stratum in eastern Nebraska and to the lacustrine beds in Mills County, Iowa, to say nothing of less definite beds pointing in the same direction, indi-

cate that during the Pliocene and on into the Glacial epoch the western elevation had not begun to affect materially the slope of the region under consideration. Farther west it may have considerably advanced before the advent of the ice.

2. The position of the ice sheet during the occupation of the principal moraine indicates little, if any, relative elevation toward the west. The westward pushing of the ice south of the Wessington Hills is difficult to explain if the slope of the land was as great as at present. The existence of the glacial lake around the Bijou Hills and above is more easily understood if the land was at a lower level than at present. Nevertheless, it is not fatal to the hypothesis to suppose the relative elevation to have been as great then as now.

3. The deposition of the loess, which we have conceived to be a fluvio-lacustrine formation, favors also a gentler slope than the present. The force of this argument would be somewhat weakened if it could be satisfactorily shown that the deposition of similarly fine material is consistent with considerable velocity in the depositing waters. We might then perhaps conceive the western portion of the loess to consist of the gigantic "alluvial fans" of the Niobrara, Elkhorn, and Platte, formed largely under subaerial conditions. Moreover, with an overloading of silt this would be more conceivable.

4. The deflection of the ice toward the east during the formation of the second moraine, together with the change of drainage about White Lake and Lake Andes, though perhaps not demanding, strongly favors the conclusion that the elevation had at that time become perceptible.

5. It will be noticed that the relation of the high terrace of the Platte River to the higher land in the vicinity of Fremont, Nebraska, suggests that the desertion of the old channel across Saunders County may have been due to its cutting through the divide which formerly separated the Platte from the Elkhorn, and that this was subsequent to the formation of the terrace. If the terrace was, as we have supposed, contemporaneous with the outer moraine, and the cutting through at Fremont was the result of an increased slope of the river, it follows that the elevation was still in progress after the occupation of that moraine, and may have continued indefinitely.

6. Another feature of the terraces points to the same general conclusion. Along the Missouri River between Monona County, Iowa, and the southern line of the State, there are no high terraces of importance on the east side of its present valley. There are a few points where the terraces along its eastern tributaries appear, but they do not project beyond the trend of the present bluffs. Along its western side, on the contrary, as we have already noticed, there are extensive terraces 60 to 100 feet high, found between Tekamah and Calhoun, between Florence and Omaha, and between Bellevue and the mouth of the Papillion, so also near the mouth of the Weeping Water. If no tilting had occurred, the converse should be true, for the rule that the streams in

the northern hemisphere erode more rapidly the right side of their valleys has few exceptions.

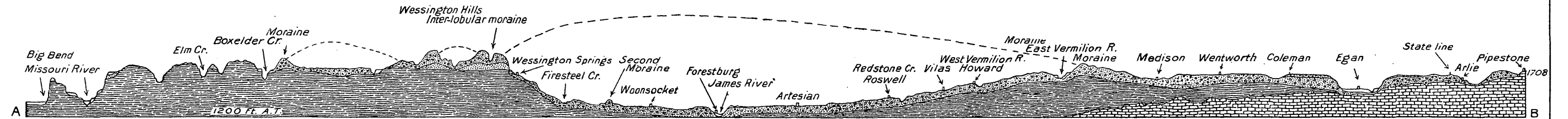
Whether the upward movement continues to the present is uncertain. The slight slope of the Missouri from Chamberlain to Sioux City would seem to favor the idea that such is not the case, and yet the corrasion of the stream may possibly keep pace with the slow elevation which may still continue. That river is so laden with sand that the deepening of its real bed may be so masked as to be undiscoverable. Considerable light upon this subject in general may be derived from the general sections. Pls. XXIV and XXV.

NORTHWARD ELEVATION OF THE REGION.

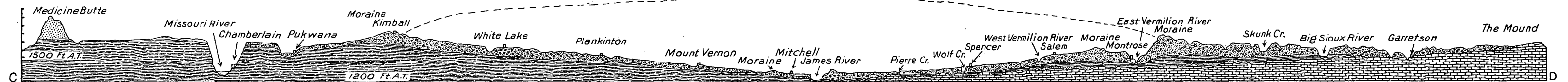
In our tables of elevation marking the general level of the loess there appeared a marked slope to the south. This is brought out very distinctly in the list of elevations, which is arranged for the most part along north-south lines. While this feature is most clearly indicated in Nebraska, it appears also in less degree in western Iowa, also in the valley of the Big Sioux above Sioux Falls, and in the southern portion of the region within the principal moraine. The following table will illustrate and impress these points:

Slope in western Iowa.

Locality.	Distance.		Slope per mile.
	Miles.	Feet.	
Plainview to Humphreys, Nebraska	54	2.5	
Osceola to Fairmount, Nebraska	42	.8	
Plainview to Fairmount, Nebraska	125	1.3	
Southwest of Coleridge to Northside, Nebraska	25	.4	
David City to Dorchester, Nebraska	42	1.2	
Coleridge to Dorchester, Nebraska	127	2.6	
Blair to Louisville, Nebraska	35	3.5	
Louisville to Turlington, Nebraska	21	1.2	
Blair to Turlington, Nebraska	56	2.6	
Sibley to Marcus, Iowa	40	1.3	
Marcus to Hillsdale, Iowa	125	1.3	
Sioux City to California Junction (Missouri Valley) ...	70	1.4	
Missouri Valley to East Nebraska City	62	1.5	
Wentworth to Taopi, South Dakota	13	3	
Taopi to Hartford, South Dakota	13	5	
Wentworth to Hartford, South Dakota	26	4	
Airlie, Minnesota, to Larchwood, Iowa	38	4.4	
Lenox to Vermilion, South Dakota	37	3.5	
Plankinton to Grandview, South Dakota	23	— 1.3	

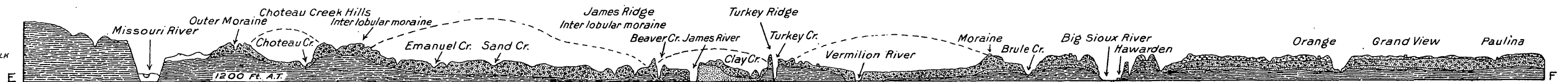
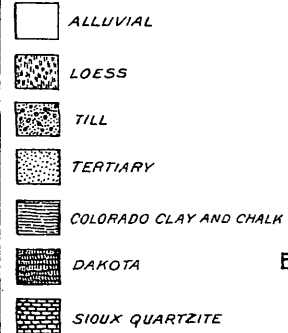


SECTION FROM THE "BIG BEND" TO PIPESTONE, MINN.

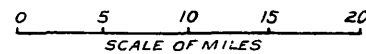


SECTION FROM MEDICINE BUTTE TO "THE MOUND" NORTH OF LUVERNE, MINN.

--- SURFACE OF ICE AT THE OCCUPATION OF THE OUTER MORaine



SECTION ON THE FORTY-NINTH PARALLEL



SECTIONS ACROSS THE GLACIATED REGION EAST AND WEST

The localities in the above table stand for the upland in their vicinity. Further information is afforded by the general sections, Pl. XXV.

From a study of this table we come to the following general conclusions: The region outside of the principal moraine has uniformly a general slope toward the south. In the loess region this averages on the long slopes from 1.3 to 2.6 feet per mile. In the Coteau des Prairies region it is from 4 to 5 feet per mile. Between the outer and the second moraines there exists on the east a slope of 3.5 feet to the mile, but west of the James there is a rise southward of from 1 to 1.5 feet per mile from the line of the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway. This irregularity may be connected with a slight increase of elevation of the loess summits from the vicinity of the Missouri south to the southern borders of Knox and Cedar counties, and be made to argue for the recent anticline, with its axis running east and west, near the Niobrara. Gen. G. K. Warren arrived at a similar conclusion from independent data noted farther west.¹ This hypothesis may help to relieve two other difficulties of some weight—the absence of the loess along the Missouri north of the Niobrara at levels below its summit in Knox County, Nebraska, and the difference in elevation of the lower bowldery terrace at Running Water and Vermilion, Dakota.

An examination of the James River Valley brings out the remarkable fact that within the second moraine the general level of the valley is exactly horizontal in a north-south direction. From the vicinity of Mitchell to Columbia and beyond, for more than 140 miles, the variation in altitude according to railroad elevations (notice especially those of the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway) is scarcely 10 feet. Letcher, Diana, Cavour, Redfield, Ashton, Aberdeen, Groton, and Columbia are all above the plain which we have named for convenience Lake Dakota.

Date.—From the steep slope of the drift plain of the Coteau des Prairies of the upper Big Sioux, we infer the existence of a northern elevation before the loess epoch. Quite probably, however, that greater slope is to be referred to a considerable elevation since that time. Being between the Dakota and Minnesota lobes, it would be naturally depressed more than lower latitudes, and when the ice was removed its resilience would be correspondingly energetic.

The generally distinct and continuous slope of the region to the south, wherever the loess has been deposited, is no more than a fluvio-lacustrine theory of the loess would explain without perceptible crustal movement. This northward slope for the most part was quite regular. We have noted the most apparent exception, concerning which we need add no more at present.

From the perfect horizontality of the general surface within the second moraine, which, although of lacustrine origin, seems to be continuous with the surrounding till, we conclude that the elevation must

¹ Preliminary Report of Explorations in Nebraska and Dakota, 1855-57, pp. 23, 24.

have ceased for southern Dakota by the time the ice had receded to the third moraine; and we have found no evidence that this elevation has continued in any other portion of our field.

AGE OF THE TROUGH OF THE MISSOURI.

In regions north of the field covered by this paper evidence is especially strong that the courses of such streams as the Cheyenne and Grand rivers were formerly eastward to the valley now occupied by the James River. This is derived mainly from the movements of the ice sheet, the traces of old divides, and the narrow character of the trough of the Missouri through this region. For fuller treatment of this topic, see a paper by the writer in the Proceedings of the American Association for the Advancement of Science for 1884.

There is evidence, also, in the region under consideration which indicates that the channel of the Missouri above Niobrara is of recent origin. The White River has a channel rivaling or even surpassing the Missouri in breadth if we consider its broad ancient valley 300 feet above the present one. There is no valley through the Bijou Range of buttes which corresponds to it in size. The Bijou Range itself seems to be an old watershed or remnant of Tertiary rocks which extends between the basins of the White and Niobrara rivers. What the ancient course of the White River was there is not yet evidence of much importance to show, but, remembering the higher level at which it formerly flowed, it may be suggested that a portion of its course remains in the Red Lake channel. Nor is it very difficult to imagine that it once ran along the upper course of American Creek past White Lake.

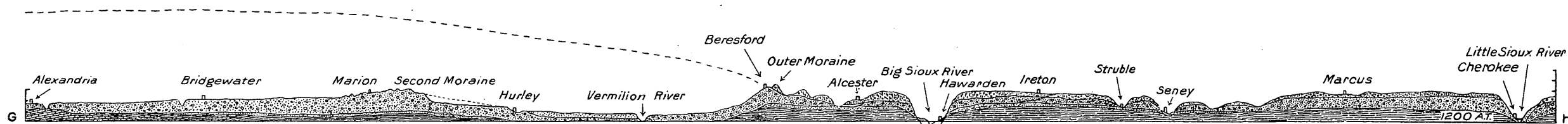
It now remains to consider the age of the Missouri below that point, more particularly that portion bordering the State of Nebraska. Two questions present themselves: 1. Was it pre-Glacial, so far as its location, or was it post-Glacial in origin? 2. If post-Glacial, did it reach its deepest excavation before the loess epoch or in more recent times? If we should find reason for believing it of pre-Glacial origin, the exact date of its location and excavation are not particularly connected with our subject.

IS THE TROUGH OF THE MISSOURI OF PRE-GLACIAL ORIGIN?

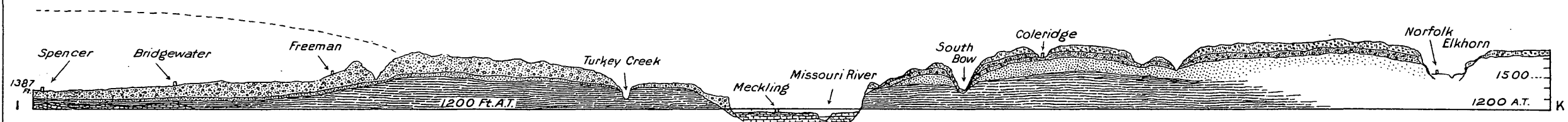
We proceed to take up the first of these questions. In favor of the pre-Glacial origin of the trough the following points may be urged:

1. Striæ, supposed to be of Glacial origin, have been found down to the level of the water at Omaha, and very nearly down to that level in southwestern Mills County, Iowa. Not unlikely more careful examination would disclose such striæ at other points.

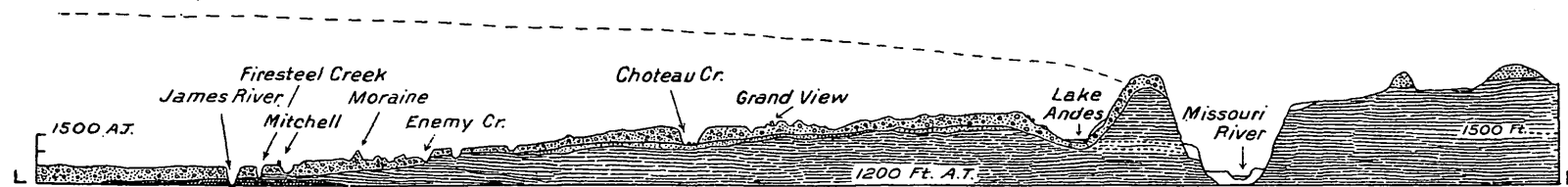
2. The bed rock lies at a depth of from 50 to 110 feet, or even 125 feet at Omaha, below the present low-water mark; and this leads us to pre-



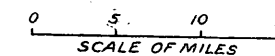
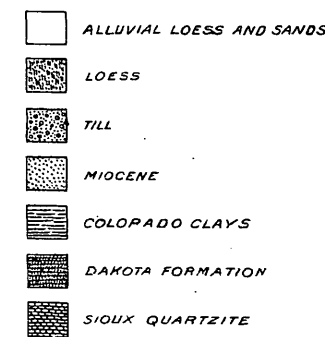
SECTION FROM ALEXANDRIA, S.D., TO CHEROKEE, IOWA.



SECTION FROM SPENCER, S.D., THROUGH TURKEY RIDGE TO NORFOLK, NEB.



SECTION FROM MITCHELL, S.D., SOUTH-WEST ACROSS THE MISSOURI.



sent in more careful detail the results of examination at five different points, viz: Sioux City, Blair, Omaha, Plattsmouth, and Nebraska City. In the first three cases sections have been kindly furnished the Survey by the engineers of the railroads which cross at these several points. A few notes from engineer Parkhurst, of the Plattsmouth bridge, were received soon after its building. The Nebraska City section has been constructed from notes, taken by the writer in 1880, of an examination carried on by the Corps of United States Engineers, who, to throw light on the history and working of the Missouri, ran a line of borings nearly across the valley at that place. The main facts at these different points may be stated as follows (for a full expression of them we refer to the subjoined cross sections in Pls. XXVI and XXVII):

At Sioux City the river hugs the eastern bank. The rock, judging from that exposed in the bank, is wholly of Dakota sandstone and shales. The river at this point is about 900 feet in breadth and from 5 to 15 feet in depth. The rock lies under both the present channel of the river on an average from 35 to 80 feet. It lies approximately parallel to the bottom of the water, but near the western bank slopes downward toward the west, and its depth beyond that point has not been determined. These remarks apply particularly to the section near Prospect Hill. The new one, upon which the Pacific Short Line is built, does not differ materially from it. Along the line of the lower bridge, that of the Sioux City and Pacific Railroad, quite different conditions were found. The three deeper borings in the vicinity of the channel, though extending 120 feet below the low-water mark, are reported not to have struck any bed rock. The section is illustrated in Pl. XXVI. When we learn that the Dakota formation is composed mainly of sand, with thin layers of clay, it seems not improbable that its strata may have been mistaken for the loose deposit of the river. In favor of that fact attention is called to the representation of white clay, blue clay, and sand upon the east bank, which would correspond in character with strata of the Dakota. Moreover, upon the west bank, at a depth of 70 feet, is a stratum of clay with its upper surface concave, as though worn by a stream, which also suggests a stratum of the Dakota. Taking the borings as given in the report of the Missouri River Commission for 1890, however, it would appear that river deposits extend to a depth of 120 feet, and how much more has not been determined.

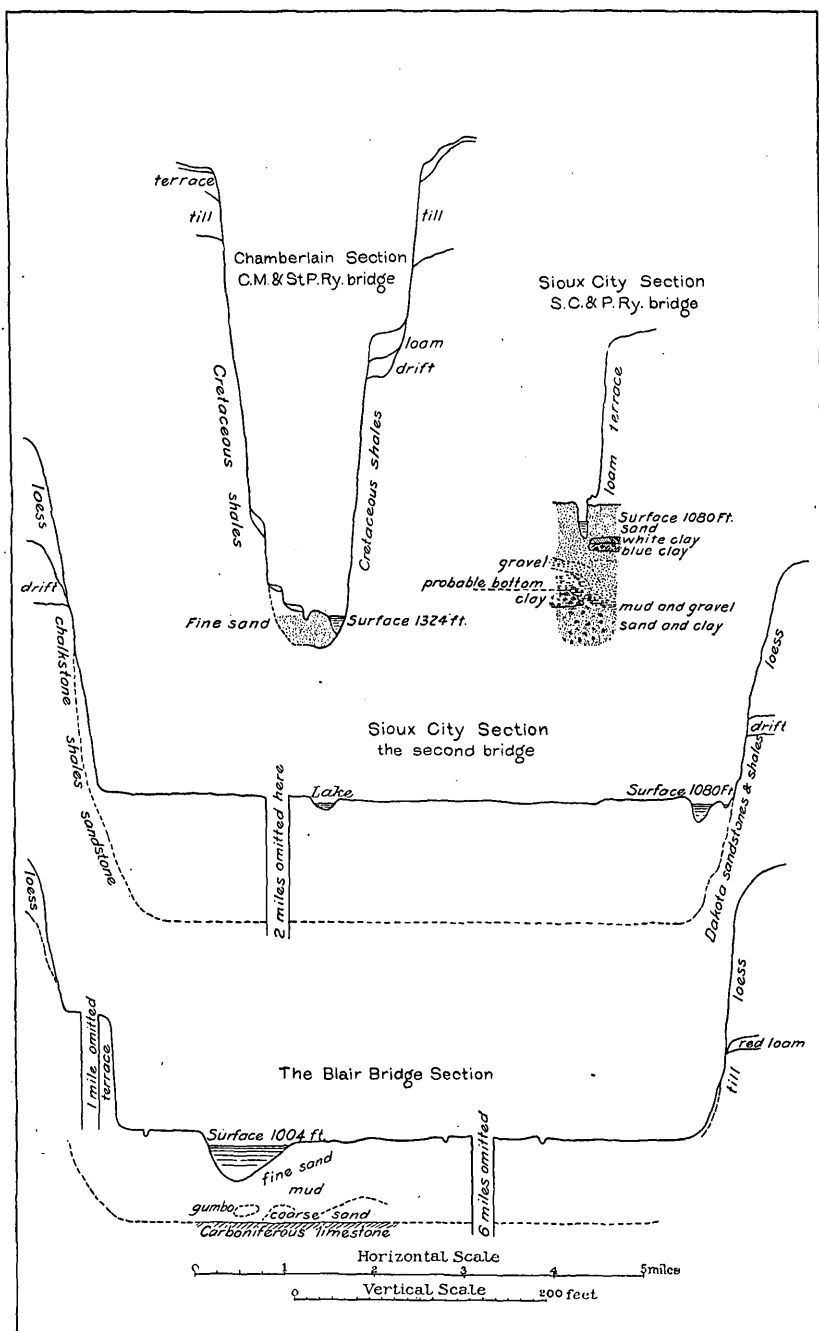
At Blair the river occupies a more central portion of a valley 11 to 12 miles in width. It is three-quarters of a mile east of the high terrace at Blair. The bed rock in the vicinity of the present channel, where the bridge of the Sioux City and Pacific Railroad crosses it, is from 47 to 50 feet below low-water mark. Its surface is quite level in an east-west direction, but seems to dip, or at least to end, abruptly to the north, for a boring 1 mile north of the bridge did not reach rock at a depth of 140 feet. Borings for a mile longitudinally near the bridge, however, indicate a slight decline of surface toward the south.

At the railroad bridge at Omaha the river lies close to the western bank, and, as has been stated before, the rock near by rises above the level of the stream. Underneath the present channel, which at this point is ordinarily about 1,000 feet in width and 2 to 15 feet in depth, bed rock lies from 30 to 75 feet below low-water mark. These remarks apply to a section of the Union Pacific Railroad bridge. The section given in our illustration (Pl. XXVII) is that determined by a set of borings crossing the river about half a mile north of the Omaha and Council Bluffs wagon bridge. In this there appears a shelf in the rock bottom on the Omaha side about 20 feet below the surface, or 15 feet below low water. A little east of the river and for three-quarters of a mile farther in that direction the rock lies at a depth of about 80 feet, and three borings east of that failed to strike bed rock, though penetrated to a depth of 90 feet. Moreover, the character of the deposits seems to be that of the river, or possibly, in one case, boulder clay. It is labeled clay and gravel.

At Plattsmouth a much less complete section has been obtained, but the river is close to the western side of the valley and the rock lies from 32 to 54 feet below low-water mark. Moreover, more recent borings have developed the fact that the bottom is quite uneven, and that in some places bed rock lies considerably lower. About a mile and a half farther north borings were carried to a depth of over 85 feet without striking rock.

At Nebraska City the river also lies next the western side of a valley 8 miles in width. The river is about 1,000 feet in breadth, and in places 30 to 40 feet in depth. By the borings before referred to, which were carried on under the directions of Mr. L. E. Cooley, assistant United States engineer, for more than 4 miles, at distances of from 2,500 to 3,000 feet apart, the rock was found to lie at a depth of from 60 to 102 feet below low-water mark. The deepest point found was at the easternmost boring where, according to his statement, "boulder clay" was struck, suggesting the idea that it may have been the western side of an old channel partially filled with boulder clay. The average depth of the rock, which on the whole is quite even, may be placed at about 75 feet below low-water mark.

From the Report of the Missouri River Commission for 1890 we learn that north of the bridge about 2 miles borings were carried to a depth of about 170 feet at several points before striking bed rock, and the inference drawn by the engineer was that he had discovered a pre-Glacial channel. He reports that the "principal bed below the general level of the north and south valley of the Missouri is a very tenacious, hard, drab-colored clay, mixed with angular fragments of stone, generally of lime," though he reports one of red quartzite, but it is not from this deep channel. He does not doubt that it is till. Assuming that this deep hole is connected with the easternmost boring shown in our figure, he makes the channel run S. 80° E., and suggests that it



SECTIONS ACROSS MISSOURI RIVER AT CHAMBERLAIN, SIOUX CITY, AND BLAIR.

may be a portion of an old valley of the Platte. It is difficult to harmonize it with the present Missouri. On the whole, it seems more rational to suppose that the deposit in question is a Carboniferous stratum, and that he has been misled by the interruption or removal of a thin layer of limestone which has, near by, formed the bottom. However, the case should be remembered and further light be sought on the subject.

Now, it appears improbable that the present stream should be still excavating the rock bounding its trough; its depth is too great, it would seem. And yet, at what time since the Glacial epoch is it likely to have reached the bed rock under its channel? On generally received principles we should be inclined, from the depth of the rock, to argue for the pre-Glacial excavation of the trough. Whether this is strongly sustained we shall see presently.

3. The occurrence of till quite low down. At Florence it is found 50 feet thick and more, extending below low-water mark. North of Council Bluffs, near Plattsmouth, and in Mills County, Iowa, typical till is found down to within 30 feet of the level of the river.

In favor of the post-Glacial origin of the immediate valley of the Missouri, it may be argued as follows:

1. A comparison of the course of the Missouri with that of the Mississippi on opposite sides of the State of Iowa brings out the contrast that, while the latter presents rapids of considerable height, nothing of the kind is found along the Missouri. As these rapids have been distinctly traced to changes in the course of the Mississippi during the Glacial epoch, or the want of correspondence of its present channel with that of pre-Glacial times, the absence of rapids in the Missouri would argue in favor of no such divergence, and since we should as easily expect a similar divergence in one case as in the other, if both had pre-Glacial channels, we have some reason for believing that the Missouri had no pre-Glacial channel.

2. Deposits which are evidently of lacustrine and of pre-Glacial origin are found in such close proximity to the present valley as to argue against the idea of a river occupying the trough previous to the deposit of the till. We refer particularly to the section north of Pacific Junction, which has been described on a previous page. This, however, is not conclusive, for we may conceive of small lakes attending a river.

3. Wherever the deposits have been examined in the present trough of the Missouri they have displayed only sand and clay, with no trace of till except in one solitary case, which has been mentioned in the Nebraska City section Pl. XXVII. At Blair and Omaha a few scattered bowlders are found next the rock, but they have evidently been rolled along by the action of the water. At Nebraska City and Omaha clay balls, evidently formed by the caving of clay banks and the rolling of the fragments by the current, occur frequently down to the rock. If the trough were of pre-Glacial age it should be found filled more or less

with boulder clay. Even if it has been more deeply excavated since the ice age, till should be found occupying a considerable part of the trough.

4. The bed rock, wherever it has been exposed, as at Blair and at Omaha, has shown a uniformly waterworn appearance, with no traces of planation or striæ. Though boulders have been found upon the surface of the rock to the depth of a foot or so, there is no evidence of their corradng the rock as if moved by ice.

We may sum up the evidence from the sections with this result: The depth of bed rock differs much in the different sections, even where the localities seem quite uniform. It will be remembered that a boring 1 mile north of Blair bridge is said to have gone 140 feet without striking bed rock. When we consider the greatly different kinds of material which the river has excavated it seems likely that the deepness of the channels is the result of softness of the material rather than of great age or the position of an ancient base level. It seems probable that there would be variations in the depth of the trough of the river similar to those in its width, and the causes for each are probably similar. Hence we conclude that the preponderance of evidence is in favor of a recent excavation of the lower portions of the channel. At the same time it should be remembered that we have no complete sections across the trough and that there is a possibility that an older and deeper channel of pre-Glacial age may yet be found.

THE TROUGH OF THE MISSOURI STILL DEEPENING:

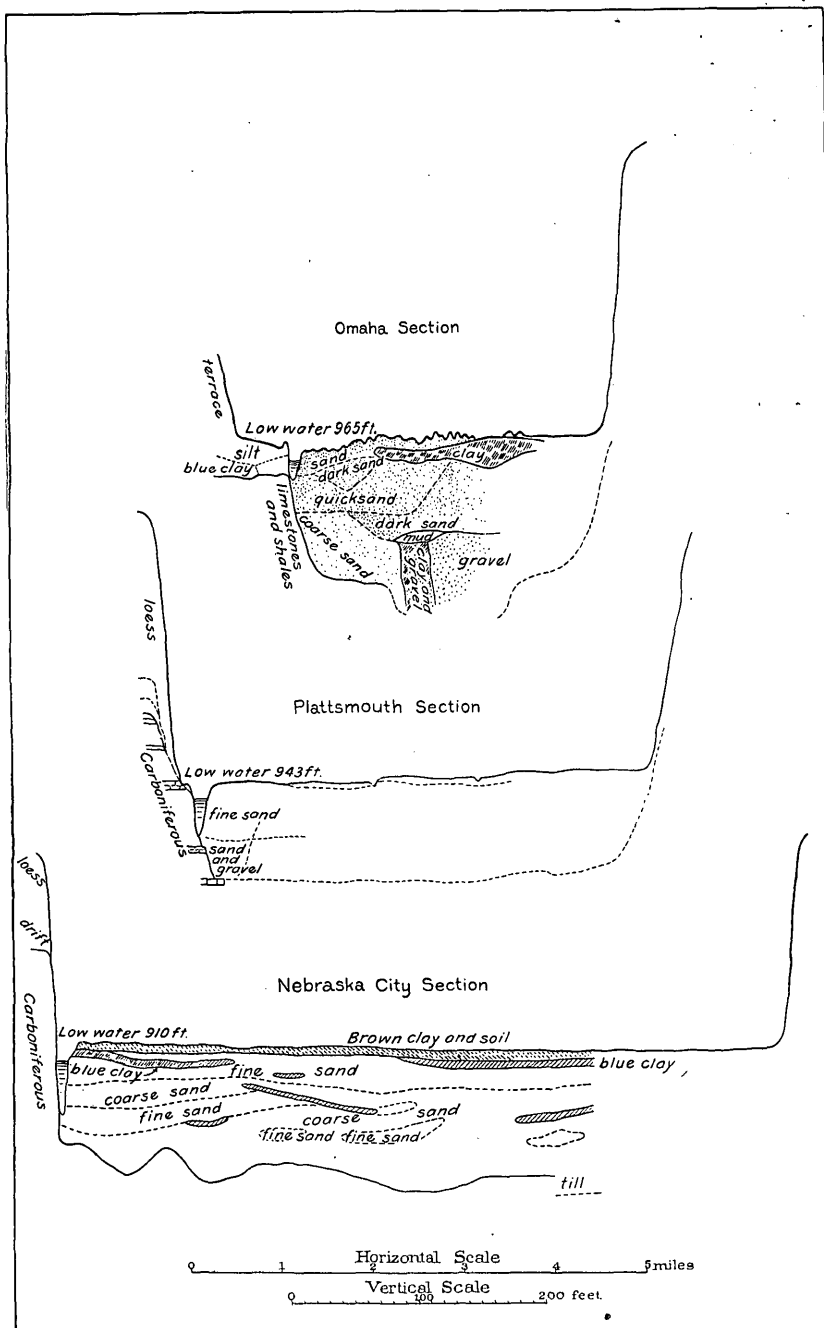
In support of the view, which may strike some as novel, that the river may cut down to the bed rock at the present time during freshets, we have the united testimony of two or three experienced observers. Mr. L. E. Cooley, in his report on the improvement of the Missouri River at Nebraska City during the year 1879,¹ makes the following statement:

The ordinary limit of scour is not the limit when the bank is held, provided the ordinary scour does not extend to permanent strata. The causes which induce heavy cutting will induce heavy scour, provided that cutting is stopped, which will extend to permanent strata if the causes continue sufficiently long. * * *

In many of the borings which have been made here, indurated clay balls, with vegetable matter, covered with a coating of sand, along with a motley collection of gravel stones, are found within a short distance of permanent strata. A precisely similar collection containing gumbo balls in a soft state was dredged from 60 feet depth at the works. These balls are from cutting banks, and the proof is conclusive that since the river has been running in silt banks, as at present, scour has occasionally, at least, reached permanent strata at 70 to 90 feet depth.

Mr. E. Gerber, assistant engineer of the Fremont, Elkhorn and Missouri Valley Railroad, who has had direct oversight of the Blair bridge, states without qualification that the river at that point cuts down to bed rock twice a year, and he further expresses the opinion that "At many places, especially in sharp bends, where no artificial contraction of the channel takes place, and where there is no greater width than

¹ Report of U. S. Engineers for 1879-80, Part II, pp. 1066, 1071.



SECTIONS ACROSS MISSOURI RIVER AT OMAHA; PLATTSMOUTH, AND NEBRASKA CITY.

at our bridge, the river scours the bed rock at high water if the rock is not too low." A demonstration of this fact is shown in fig. 31 from soundings taken at the Blair bridge in 1883.

Mr. George A. Lederle, local engineer of the Omaha bridge, expresses a similar opinion, though no definite observations have been made at that point to establish it.

If it be urged that the excavation of so great a valley as is found above Blair and near Nebraska City since the Glacial period is inconceivable, it may be replied that much may be explained by the nature of the formations through which the river has corraded its course.

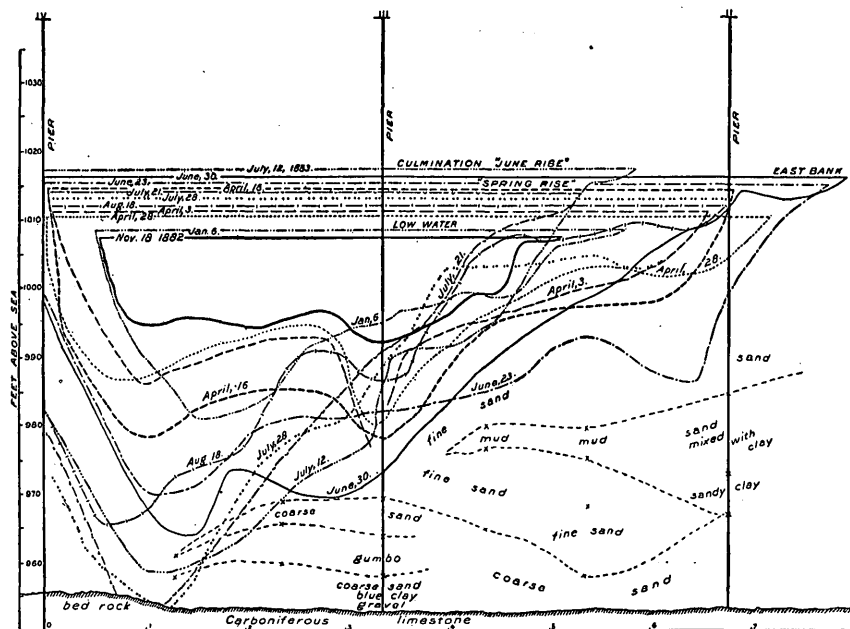


FIG. 31.—Record of soundings at Blair bridge, 1883.

Above Blair the Carboniferous limestone does not appear, and doubtless dips far below the bottom of the river. The great width of the valley above that point has been excavated, therefore, in the loose deposits of the Cretaceous and Tertiary, while its deepening was prevented by the limestone ledge near Blair and De Soto. Even the Carboniferous deposits, though at points largely abounding in limestone, are perhaps one-half clay and very friable sandstone and shale. Moreover, the limestone ledges are rarely more than 10 feet in thickness, and the thickest easily separate into blocks less than 3 feet in diameter. Cliffs of alternating rock and clay may be quite as easily degraded as those of clay alone.

The inequalities of the depth of the bed rock seem to correspond with the character of the strata. For instance, at Blair the shallowness of the trough seems to be referable to a thick stratum which appears above the river at Omaha; the shallowness at Plattsmouth, to

a thick limestone stratum which appears a little above the river at Rock Bluff. The rock thus far dips gently toward the north. The greater depth at Omaha may be due to the series of clay layers which intervene between the two, together with the effect of the plunging of the current over the limestone stratum as it was worn from the south toward the north. The great depth at Nebraska City may be similarly referred to the rapidity of the stream after passing the limestone stratum at Rock Bluff. Quite possibly, also, this has been increased by a fold which crosses the river at Jones Point, near the mouth of the Weeping Water. The strata dip considerably to the south, perhaps 100 feet in the distance of a mile. This brings the series of clays which are exposed in the vicinity of Nebraska City down into the river and accounts for the deeper excavation at that point.

The *modus operandi* of the excavation of the trough seems to be in this wise: While the stream has rapid velocity it preserves much of its straight, narrow, deep channel, which characterizes its upper portion, but when such a channel has attained a uniform slope it begins to form bends which begin the widening of its valley. During this stage the deepest places are in the sharp bends, and only at such points has the river rock bottom. If it is heavily burdened with sand and silt, as in the case of the Missouri, between such bends, according to the testimony of engineers as well as the common experience of river captains, the river is very shallow, as the current here is slackened and sand accumulates, especially during high water.

As the river meanders back and forth and the bends continually work down stream, the whole breadth of the valley becomes scoured out to the depth of the sharpest bends. In this way we may reconcile its present partially filled condition with its recent excavation. The work of broadening the trough does not begin at all points at the same time. Where the strata are soft and friable the stream reaches its base-level of erosion, and expends its energy in widening its valley, while at points where harder strata occur it is spending all its energy in cutting out its bottom.¹ Thus we may explain, in part at least, the remarkable widening of the trough of the Missouri between Yankton and Blair, and in less degree between Council Bluffs and Rock Bluff, and again between Jones Point and Peru.

We conclude, therefore, that though the trough may possibly have been located before the Ice age, its deeper portions must have been excavated after the deposition of the surrounding till. Moreover, this excavation may have begun soon after the Iowan or even the Kansan stage of the Glacial period.²

If it should be asked how we reconcile the arguments in favor of its pre-Glacial origin with the conclusion at which we have arrived, we should simply ascribe the *striae* preferably to the action of river ice, though they may have been caused by land ice of an older epoch, and

¹ Cf. Powell's Exploration of the Colorado River, p. 202 et seq.

² Cf. Todd, New lights on the drifts: Proc. Iowa Acad. Sci., 1898.

the deposition of till at altitudes near the river where it is not the result of landslides to depressions in the surface on which the till was deposited, for the general surface of the Carboniferous strata seems to have been far from even. The deep deposits of sand and gravel in the vicinity of Council Bluffs and Omaha we should ascribe to similar cause. It would seem that when the Missouri began its course during or after the drift period, and in crossing some of these deep holes large quantities of this material collected in them.

The very rough surface of the Carboniferous rocks is graphically described by Dr. F. V. Hayden in his Final Report on Nebraska, p. 25. Speaking of eastern Nebraska, he says: "If we can imagine the superficial material entirely removed from the country, the surface, as it seems to me, would be rugged in the extreme. * * * The massive piles of limestone would stand around here and there scattered over the surface like gigantic ruins." This quotation, while expressing a truth, may be misunderstood. If we should remove the pre-Glacial clays and sand beds the buttes of Carboniferous limestone would probably rise less than 200 feet above the intervening valleys.

If this conclusion be correct, there may not have been very great erosion of the older rocks since the Ice age.

WAS THE TROUGH EXCAVATED PREVIOUS TO THE LOESS EPOCH?

This depends largely upon the theory one may hold concerning the origin of the loess. If it is looked upon as eolian, the two may have been developing simultaneously. In that case the conception would be that the Missouri began its course after the Kansan epoch, and that the material of the loess must have been derived from its bars and banks during its lower stages and spread over the uneven surface adjacent. But if we look upon it as of a lacustrine or a fluvio-lacustrine origin, it would seem necessary to conceive the trough of the Missouri to have been subsequent. If we favor the latter views, the base-level of erosion and deposition must have been approximately coincident with the present upland level of the loess region. We may have some fragments of the original surface still extant in the "flats" which we have already mentioned as occurring in western Iowa, Nebraska, and Missouri. Accordingly, the most of the upland loess was deposited no later than the Iowan epoch. If it seems incredible that this trough, which really is of vast extent, has been excavated since that time, we may find it more credible by considering the following points:

1. The present trough may have been largely excavated from Pleistocene deposits. We have already alluded to the very uneven surface of the older rocks. If the drift were resting upon deep sand beds, as has been found in northern Nebraska, this would assist largely in the removal of the material.

2. The Missouri during the Wisconsin epoch was the main channel for carrying off the water from the whole western edge of the great ice sheet. Estimates will be found more fully given in the Report of the

Missouri Geological Survey, Vol. X, p. 202. According to these, the probable average size of the stream was about ten times greater than at present. This would add greatly to its eroding power.

3. The loess has a peculiar property for creeping and rearranging itself at lower levels. This subject will be found more fully treated in the Proceedings of the Iowa Academy of Sciences for 1897. We simply call attention here to the following facts: The loess upon steep slopes frequently shows a step-like surface. Most generally it attracts little attention, and has been referred by some to the checking by vegetation along steep hillsides or to the tramping of grazing animals. Even in this moderate degree deep excavations will show that these steps are caused by a series of slight faults running transverse to the direction of the slopes. They may be compared to crevasses of glaciers. It appears that this phenomenon occurs when moisture has accumulated in the base of the formation and dissolved the cementing material of the loess and rendered it plastic, or the moisture may be in the underlying clay or sand, rendering it similarly plastic. Occasionally this phenomenon becomes so marked that the crevasses or faults have a throw of several inches. During rain or the spring thaws these cracks are filled and recemented. Similar results are also accomplished by hillside wash, which frequently becomes very marked upon steep slopes. After prolonged rains the formation becomes saturated and is very easily washed away and rearranged. Because of its straticulate structure and homogeneous color and composition it is very difficult for anyone to distinguish the newly arranged material from the original deposits. In this way we may find a rational explanation of the recent origin of the troughs of the Missouri and its tributary streams, and also in considerable degree of the uneven surface and great vertical range of both the loess and the drift.

ELEVATIONS.

Elevation above sea level of stations on Fremont, Elkhorn and Missouri Valley Railroad west of Norfolk Junction.

[Furnished by the kindness of E. Gerber, assistant engineer.]

Main line:	Feet.	Main line—Continued:	Feet.
Battle Creek	1, 606	Ainsworth	2, 538
Burnett	1, 695	Johnstown	2, 618
Oakdale	1, 726	Wood Lake	2, 704
Neligh	1, 761	Arabia	2, 735
Clearwater	1, 808	Thatcher	2, 669
Ewing	1, 875	Valentine	2, 598
Inman	1, 946	Creighton Branch:	
O'Neill	1, 992	Norfolk (town) ¹	1, 542
Emmet	2, 039	Hadar	1, 574
Atkinson	2, 125	Pierce	1, 599
Stuart	2, 171	Morehouse	1, 657
Newport	2, 249	Plainview	1, 700
Bassett	2, 340	Creighton	1, 617
Long Pine	2, 416		

¹ This is 1 mile from the junction, which is 1,532 feet.

Elevations on the Chicago, St. Paul, Minneapolis and Omaha Railway.

[Furnished by the kindness of C. W. Johnson, chief engineer.]

Locality.	Distance.	Altitude.
Main line:	<i>Miles.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Sioux City, crossing of Second and Howard streets .....	.....	1, 122. 2
Missouri River .....	.....	1, 102. 33
Covington	0	1, 124
Dakota City	5	1, 121
Coburn Junction	10	1, 124
Do	12	1, 125
Hubbard	14	1, 161
Grade over Pigeon Creek	20. 5	1, 356
Bottom of Pigeon Creek	20. 5	1, 307
Simons Siding (summit)	22	1, 436
Grade of Elk Creek	23. 5	1, 356
Bottom of Elk Creek	23. 5	1, 336
Do	23. 6	1, 352
Summit	26. 2	1, 494
Emerson Junction	27. 2	1, 450
Flourney	34. 5	1, 399
Pender	39	1, 347
Bancroft	48. 7	1, 316
Lyons	56. 3	1, 306
Oakland	65	1, 300. 3
Craig	70	1, 280
Summit	71. 5	1, 341
Tekamah	79	1, 075
Herman	86. 2	1, 050
Hiland	91. 2	1, 031
Blair	96. 2	1, 100
Mills	101. 5	1, 026
Calhoun	105. 2	1, 094
Summit	116	1, 232
Florence	120	1, 033
Omaha	126. 2	1, 065
Ponca Branch:		
Coburn Junction	0	1, 124
Jackson	3	1, 141
Grade at Elk Creek	4. 2	1, 156
Bottom of Elk Creek	4. 2	1, 140
Grade at Elk Creek	6	1, 174
Bottom of Elk Creek	6	1, 152
Summit	11	1, 279
Grade at Badger Creek	11. 5	1, 243
Bottom of Badger Creek	11. 5	1, 225
Ponca	16	1, 162

Elevations on the Chicago, St. Paul, Minneapolis and Omaha Railway—Continued.

Locality.	Distance.	Altitude.
Norfolk Branch:	<i>Miles.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Emerson	0	1,450
Summit	2.5	1,541
Wakefield.....	9.5	1,404
Wayne.....	18.6	1,469
Grade at South Logan Creek	19.2	1,470
Bottom of South Logan Creek.....	19.2	1,452
Northside	31.3	1,643
Summit	34.2	1,809
Hoskins.....	38	1,684
Norfolk	46.5	1,542
Hartington Branch:		
Wakefield.....	0	1,404
Grade at Logan Creek.....	3.7	1,422
Bottom of Logan Creek.....	3.7	1,404
Concord.....	10	1,455
Grade at Logan Creek.....	17.5	1,503
Bottom of Logan Creek.....	17.5	1,490
Coleridge	24	1,672
Hartington.....	33.8	1,404.5
Sioux Falls Branch:		
Junction	181.8	1,633
Summit, grade.....	184.5	1,691
Little Rock River—		
Water.....	187.4	1,629
Bridge	187.4	1,649
Rushmore	190.1	1,665
Adrian	196.9	1,538
Kanaranza Creek—		
Water.....	198	1,499
Bridge	198	1,511
Summit, grade.....	199.5	1,569
Drake.....	203.7	1,516
Elk Slough, grade.....	206.2	1,469
Summit, grade.....	207.1	1,515
Rock River, water.....	210.3	1,423
Luverne.....	211.1	1,451
Summit, grade.....	216.1	1,543
Beaver Creek—		
Station.....	219.3	1,443
Water.....	219.8	1,385
State Line.....	224.4	1,383
Valley Springs	225.2	1,392

Elevations along the Dakota Central Division of the Chicago and Northwestern Railway from Hawarden, Iowa, to Iroquois, South Dakota.

Locality.	Station.	Altitude.
		<i>Feet.</i>
Hawarden.....	0	
Crossing, Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul—		
Grade	18	1, 182
Ground.....	18	1, 179
East bank Big Sioux.....	38	1, 182
Do	108	1, 181
Do	378	1, 437
Alcester.....	468	1, 355
Do	521	1, 320
Do	538	1, 344
East bank Brule Creek	584	1, 310
Do	748	1, 345
Do	908	1, 513
Beresford	928	1, 505
Do	1, 118	1, 340
Do	1, 358	1, 240
Centreville.....	1, 463	1, 233
East bank Vermilion	1, 487	1, 223
Do	1, 528	1, 207
Do	1, 538	1, 240
Do	1, 953	1, 325
Hurley.....	2, 154	1, 272
Do	2, 568	1, 360
Crossing of Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul	2, 579	1, 335
Grade of Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul.....	2, 579	1, 330
Grade of Chicago and Northwestern	2, 579	1, 335
Parker	2, 627	1, 340
East bank of West Vermilion.....	2, 637	1, 340
Do	2, 837	1, 506
Do	3, 027	1, 500
Do	3, 337	1, 560
Canistoga	3, 487	1, 555
Salem and crossing of St. Paul, Minneapolis and Omaha	4, 017	1, 515
East bank of West Vermilion	4, 182	1, 485
Do	4, 277	1, 530
Canova.....	4, 662	1, 525
Vilas	5, 187	1, 480
East bank of Rock Creek	5, 510	1, 426
Do	5, 657	1, 466
Carthage	5, 857	1, 440
East bank Redstone Creek.....	5, 865	1, 436
Esmond	6, 227	1, 430
Do	6, 397	1, 450
Do	6, 617	1, 425
Iroquois.....	6, 672	1, 400

Elevations along a preliminary survey from Chamberlain, South Dakota, to Lemars, Iowa.

[Furnished by B. B. Colborne, who made it in the interests of the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway. Datum, 300 feet below starting point, which happened to be the bottom (not bottom land) of the Big Sioux River.]

Locality.	Station.	Elevation above datum.
		<i>Feet.</i>
One mile north of Chamberlain, South Dakota, water in Missouri River above sea 1,321 feet		221. 95
Chamberlain, station		251
One mile east of Chamberlain	0	300
Summit, sec. 34, T. 104, R. 70	400	505. 7
East end of Red Lake	500	450
Water in lake	500	440
Bijou Hills Gap	1, 300	649. 8
Pratt Creek, water, sec. 2, T. 99, R. 68	2, 850	358. 4
Do	0	358. 4
Sec. 33, T. 99, R. 68	300	492
Summit	500	522. 9
Pease Creek, sec. 32, T. 98, R. 66	859	395
Summit	1, 150	463
West end of Lake Andes	1, 400	330
Lake Andes, water	1, 400	319. 6
Channel southwest from lake	1, 450	326
Between moraine and lake	1, 500	342
Choteau Creek:		
Bottom, sec. 29, T. 96, R. 63	2, 000	280
Sec. 25, T. 94, R. 62, grade	3, 000	184
Sec. 36, T. 94, R. 62, grade	3, 050 ?	181
Sec. 36, T. 94, R. 62, water	0	169
Summit	300	327
Emanuel Creek:		
Quarter of a mile above Springfield station	600	123
Three-quarters of a mile below Springfield station		104
Near station		98
Water in Missouri River at—		
Springfield		76
Yankton		48
Yankton, grade of Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul		64
Edge of river bottom at mouth of Turkey Creek, sec. 13, T. 94, R. 54; station from Springfield	2, 200	58
Summit	2, 500	227
West edge of Vermilion, second bottom	2, 750	110

Elevations along a preliminary survey from Chamberlain, South Dakota, to Lemars, Iowa—Continued.

Locality.	Station.	Elevation. above datum.
Vermilion River:		<i>Feet.</i>
Grade, sec. 23, T. 94, R. 52 (Bloomingdale)	2,950	32
Lower bottom, east edge	3,500	38
Second bottom, west edge	3,150	102
Second bottom, east edge	3,500	148
Brule Creek:		
Sec. 16, T. 94, R. 50 (Emmett)	3,550	105
Water		95
Brule Creek, bottom	3,700	125
Summit	3,850	268
Big Sioux:		
Bottom	4,050	27
River	4,100	0
Railroad crossing at Akron		28
Summit	4,500	277
Broken Kettle Creek, sec. 8, T. 92, R. 47	4,650	158
Summit, sec. 36, T. 92, R. 47	4,850	280 301
Mink Creek	5,100	105
Mink Creek, water	5,100	87
Sec. 23, T. 92, R. 46	5,150	8.6
West Floyd River:		
Grade	5,200	79
Water		60
Floyd River:		
Grade	5,300	84
Water		60
Lemars, 5-10 feet lower than Illinois Central station ..	5,400	95

Elevations on survey north of Lake Andes, from sec. 28, T. 96, R. 63, to Platte Creek Crossing, sec. 2, T. 99, R. 68.

Locality.	Station.	Elevation.
Crossing of Lake Andes, sec. 16, T. 97 R. 64, (water 7 feet deep)	0	<i>Feet.</i> 319.6
Summit north of Lake Andes	500	564.9
Pease Creek	800	487
Summit	1,150	548
Platte Creek	1,450	358

Elevations along the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway in Dakota and part of Iowa, as per profiles in chief engineer's office.

[Furnished by the courtesy of D. J. Whittemore, chief engineer.]

Locality.	Elevation above Lake Michigan.	Elevation above the sea.
	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Sheldon, Iowa	822	1, 404
Boyden, Iowa	830	1, 412
Patterson, Iowa	842	1, 424
Summit west of Patterson	869	1, 451
Rock Valley	662	1, 244
Junction of Rock Valley	658	1, 240
Rock River:		
Track	657	1, 239
Water	635	1, 217
Inwood	880	1, 460
Sioux River:		
Track	657	1, 239
Water	635	1, 217
Canton	655	1, 247
Crossing at Canton Junction	670	1, 252
Worthing	772	1, 354
Lennox	763	1, 345
Vermilion River (bridge)	711	1, 293
Chicago and Northwestern Railway, crossing east of Parker	736	1, 318
Parker	758	1, 340
Summit west of Parker	894	1, 476
Junction at Marion Junction	856	1, 438
Station at Marion Junction	858	1, 440
Wolf Creek bridge	830	1, 412
Bridgewater	829	1, 411
Emery Station	797	1, 379
Pierre Creek bridge	720	1, 302
Alexandria	761	1, 343
James River bridge east of Mitchell:		
Track	629	-----
Water	615	1, 197
Station at Mitchell	710	1, 292
Junction west of Mitchell	706	1, 288
Mount Vernon	822	1, 404
Plankinton	937	1, 519
White Lake	1, 055	1, 637
Kimball	1, 197	1, 779
Pukwana	955	1, 537

*Elevations along the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway in Dakota and part of Iowa,
as per profiles in chief engineer's office—Continued.*

Locality.	Elevation above Lake Michigan.	Elevation above the sea.
	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Chamberlain	772	1,354
Missouri River at Chamberlain	739	1,321
Running Water Branch:		
Marion Junction	856	1,438
Freeman	920	1,502
Menno	733	1,315
Station, James River	602	1,184
Bridge over James River—		
Track	598	1,180
Water	587	1,169
Scotland	756	1,338
Tyndall	827	1,409
Springfield	643	1,225
Running Water	629	1,211
Water in river		1,221
Sioux City and Dakota Division:		
Junction near Scotland	772	1,354
Lesterville	793	1,375
Utica	797	1,379
Yankton (Burleigh street)	602	1,184
Bridge over James River—		
Track	586	1,168
Water	570	1,152
Gayville	576	1,158
Meckling	565	1,147
Bridge, Vermilion River—		
Track	559	1,141
Water	538	1,110
Vermilion	559	1,141
Burbank	551	1,133
Elk Point	540	1,122
Jefferson	527	1,109
McCook	521	1,103
Bridge, Sioux River—		
Track	521	1,103
Low water	497	1,079
Sioux City	513	1,095

*Elevations along the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway in Dakota and part of Iowa,
as per profiles in chief engineer's office—Continued.*

Locality.	Elevation above Lake Michigan.	Elevation above the sea.
Elk Point to Sioux Falls Junction :	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Elk Point	540	1, 122
Bridge, Sioux River—		
Track	521	1, 103
Water	507	1, 089
Westfield	540	1, 122
Akron (Portlandville)	564	1, 146
Chicago and Northwestern crossing (Hawarden) ..	587	1, 169
Calliope	591	1, 173
Bridge, Sioux River—		
Track	598	1, 180
Water	571	1, 153
Eden	631	1, 213
Austen	613	1, 195
Fairview	623	1, 205
Beloit	649	1, 221
Bridge, Sioux River—		
Track	648	1, 230
Water	633	1, 215
Crossing at Canton Junction	670	1, 252
Bridge, Sioux River at Sioux Falls—		
Track	804	1, 486
Water	787	1, 369
Sioux Falls	802	1, 384
Bridge over Sioux River at Dell Rapids—		
Track	907	1, 480
Water	879	1, 451
Station, Dell Rapids	901	1, 483
Bridge, Sioux River—		
Track	909	1, 491
Water	894	1, 476
Track	928	1, 510
Water	911	1, 493
Sioux Falls Junction	929	1, 511
Southern Minnesota Division :		
Airlie, Minnesota	1, 070	1, 652
Flandreau	983	1, 565
Bridge, Sioux River—		
Track	938	1, 520
Water	928	1, 510

Elevations along the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway in Dakota and part of Iowa, as per profiles in chief engineer's office—Continued.

Locality.	Elevation above Lake Michigan.	Elevation above the sea.
Southern Minnesota Division—Continued.		
Egan.....	<i>Feet.</i> 943	<i>Feet.</i> 1,525
Sioux Falls Junction.....	929	1,511
Coleman, Dakota.....	1,109	1,691
Wentworth.....	1,108	1,690
Madison.....	1,081	1,663
Bridge, East Vermilion River—		
Track.....	1,067	1,649
Water.....	1,040	1,622
Winfred.....	1,122	1,704
Howard.....	980	1,562
Chicago and Northwestern crossing, Vilas.....	888	1,470
Roswell.....	814	1,396
Diana (Artesian).....	727	1,309
Bridge, James River—		
Track.....	652	1,234
Water.....	627	1,209
Forestburg.....	644	1,226
Woonsocket.....	720	1,302
Hastings and Dakota Division:		
At lower station at Ortonville.....	402	984
Bridge, Minnesota River—		
Track.....	383	965
Water.....	370	952
Station, Milbank Junction.....	559	1,141
Summit siding (summit of Coteaus).....	1,415	1,997
Waubay.....	1,225	1,807
Webster.....	1,258	1,830
Bristol.....	1,190	1,772
Andover.....	891	1,473
Groton.....	719	1,301
Bridge, James River—		
Track.....	696	1,278
Water.....	684	1,266
Bath.....	715	1,297
Chicago and Northwestern crossing.....	714	1,296
Aberdeen.....	715	1,297
Mina.....	847	1,429
Ipswich.....	945	1,527

Elevations along the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway in Dakota and part of Iowa, as per profiles in chief engineer's office—Continued.

Locality.	Elevation above Lake Michigan.	Elevation above the sea.
Whetstone Branch:	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Milbank Junction	559	1, 141
Corona	584	1, 166
Wilmot	606	1, 188
End of track (33 miles from Milbank).....	637	1, 219
James Valley line :		
Mitchell		
Junction near Mitchell	706	1, 288
Letcher	713	1, 295
Woonsocket	720	1, 302
Alpena	731	1, 213
Virgil	755	1, 337
Wolsey	765	1, 347
Chicago and Northwestern crossing (Wolsey).....	764	1, 346
Bonilla	750	1, 332
Tulare	729	1, 311
Redfield	705	1, 287
Chicago and Northwestern crossing	706	1, 288
Ashton	708	1, 290
Mellette	792	1, 294
Warner	793	1, 295
Chicago and Northwestern Railway crossing	712	1, 294
Aberdeen	715	1, 297
Westport	745	1, 227
Frederick	783	1, 365
Ellendale	864	1, 446

NOTE.—In preparing the above statement the elevations above Lake Michigan were determined by reducing the datum lines of the various profiles on file in the office to lake level, beginning at Milwaukee, thence to La Crosse, and thence by four different routes to a common point in Dakota, where it was found that the extreme variation was not more than 5 feet. The elevations given are about an average of the extremes found.—E. O. Reeder, assistant engineer.

Supplementary list.

Locality.	Elevation above Lake Michigan.	Elevation above the sea.
Scotland and Armour line:	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Scotland	756	1,338
Tripp	974	1,556
Delmont.....	899	1,481
Armour	932	1,514
Tripp and Mitchell line.....		
Tripp	974	1,556
Parkston.....	811	1,393
Ethan.....	756	1,338
Mitchell.....	712	1,294

Elevations along the Sioux City, O'Neill and Western Railway.

[Obtained through the kindness of J. H. Charles, of Sioux City, from F. C. Hills, receiver.]

Locality.	Elevation above datum.	Elevation above sea.
	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Government bench mark, Sioux City	106.69	1,111.8
South Sioux City, Nebraska.....	100	1,106
Jackson	110	1,116
Siding, sec. 25, T. 29, R. 6. E.....	175	1,181
Waterbury	280	1,286
Summit east of Allen.....	515	1,521
Allen.....	480	1,486
Summit east of Dixon	550	1,556
Dixon	445	1,451
Laurel	465	1,471
Belden	540	1,546
Logan Creek, bridge.....	600	1,606
Randolph	660	1,666
Summit west of Randolph	825	1,831
Osmond	655	1,661
Bridge east of Plainview	640	1,640
Plainview	668	1,674
Brunswick	846	1,852
Savage	860	1,866
Orchard	920	1,926
Emporia	965	1,971
Page	947	1,953
O'Neill	965	1,971

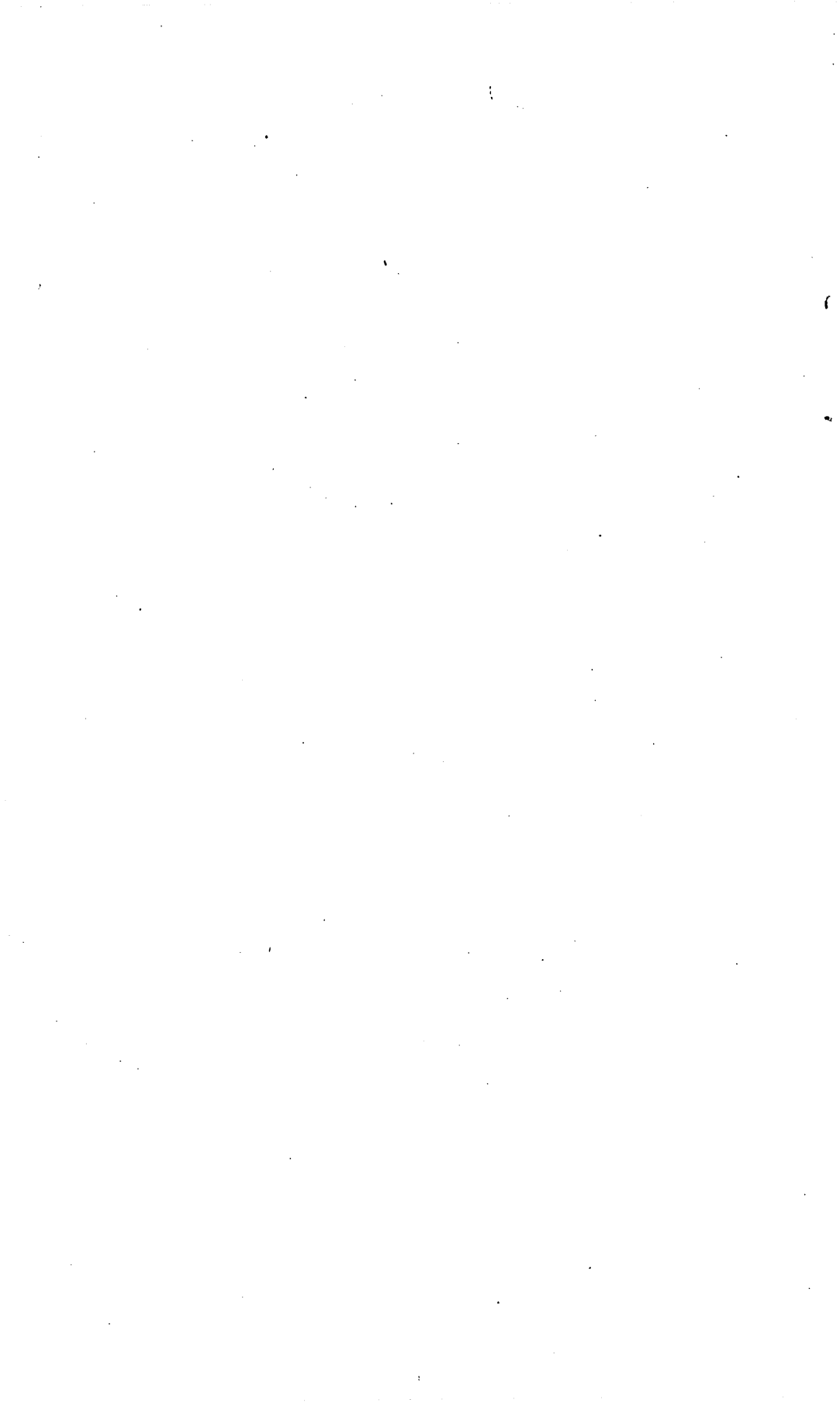
Elevations along the Sioux City, O'Neill and Western Railway—Continued.

Locality.	Elevation above datum.	Elevation above sea.
	<i>Feet.</i>	<i>Feet.</i>
Western line of Hall County	2, 338
Western line of Rock County	2, 576
Western line of Brown County	2, 763
Crossing, Middleloup, Cherry County, water level.	2, 932
Highest point, R. 33, Cherry County, three-fourths mile east of west line	3, 379
Highest point, R. 37, Cherry County, one-half mile east of west line	3, 658
Western margin of Cherry County	3, 837
Highest point, R. 44, Sheridan County, west line	3, 945
Crossing, Box Butte Creek, Sheridan County, western margin	3, 845

Elevation of the Sioux City and Northern Railroad.

[Through the kindness of S. J. Beals, receiver.]

Locality.	Elevation above sea.
	<i>Feet.</i>
Sioux City, shops east of Division street	1, 109. 6
Dalton, Iowa	1, 212. 5
Struble, Iowa	1, 271. 7
Garretson, South Dakota	1, 496. 1



INDEX.

	Page.		Page.
Ancient Island, exposure near.....	131	Chamberlain, elevations between Lemars, Iowa, and.....	159-160
Area discussed, limits of.....	14	plate showing section across Missouri River at.....	148
Aughey, S., cited on fossils.....	98	terrace at.....	128, 130, 131
Bailey, S. W., aid by.....	119	Chamberlin, T. C., reference to.....	22
Bain, H. F., cited on petrified bones.....	16	work of.....	13
Battle Creek, description of valley of.....	104-106	Channels, ancient, description of.....	60-61
Beals, S. J., elevations furnished by.....	167	Charles, J. H., acknowledgments to.....	17
Bennett, stria near.....	69	elevations furnished by.....	166-167
Benton formation, location of exposures of.....	15	Chicago and Northwestern Railway, eleva- tions along.....	158
Berks, Nebraska, figure showing exposure near.....	68	Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway, elevations along.....	161-165
section near.....	80	Chicago, St. Paul, Minneapolis and Omaha Railway, elevations along.....	155-157
Big Sioux Gap, course of outer moraine near.....	34-35	Choteau Creek Hills, description of.....	28
Big Sioux River, cause of the great bend of.....	108-109	Cleveland, D. C., information furnished by.....	73
course of moraine from Vermilion Point to.....	35-36	Colborne, B. B., acknowledgments to.....	17
description of valley of.....	107	elevations furnished by.....	159-160
elevations on.....	108, 157, 158	Coleridge, plate showing base of drift near.....	74
exposures along.....	82-84	Concord, Nebraska, drift near.....	73
low-water slopes of.....	140	Cooley, L. E., quoted on the deepening of the Missouri River.....	150
terraces along.....	138-139	Coteau des Prairies region, boundaries of.....	103
view of.....	138	character of surface of.....	103-104
Bijou Hills, figure showing portion of moraine near.....	24	bowlery knolls in.....	109-110
view of.....	43	hummocks in.....	110
Blair, depth to bed rock at.....	147	striae in.....	110-111
plate showing section across Missouri River at.....	148	valleys of.....	104-107
Blair bridge, record of soundings at.....	151	Council Bluffs, Iowa, sections near.....	88-89
Bonhomme, course of outer moraine from Spirit Mound to.....	29-32	Creighton, Nebraska, drift near.....	73
Boonsboro, Iowa, section from the Missouri River to.....	101	Croninger, C. J., information furnished by.....	125
Bowlders, distribution of.....	39-41	Crow Lake, map of osar-like ridges near.....	23
Brandon Township, exposure in.....	106	Dakota sandstone, location of exposures of.....	15
Bridgewater, figure showing gouge from quartzite exposure near.....	126	Dana, J. D., cited on moraine near Turtle Ridge.....	22
photograph of striae on quartzite near.....	126	Dell Rapids, description of.....	107-108
Brule Creek, course of outer moraine from Canton to.....	32-34	Drift, eastern boundary of.....	58
Call, R. E., shells determined by.....	121	relation of underlying formations to.....	67
Canton, Iowa, course of outer moraine from Brule Creek to.....	32-34	western boundary of.....	56-58
section near.....	86	East Bijou, distribution of drift in.....	44-45
Carroll County, Iowa, section near south line of.....	101	East Vermilion River, elevations on.....	157
Castalia, wells near.....	120	Egan, section near.....	138
Cedar Creek Hills, description of.....	25-26	Elevations, lists of.....	39, 48-49, 58-59, 91-92, 108, 154-187
figure showing.....	25	method of obtaining.....	16
		Elk Creek, elevations on.....	155
		Elkhorn River, terrace along.....	63
		Emanuel Creek Gap, description of.....	28-29
		Enemy Creek, ancient channel near.....	119

	Page.		Page.
Enemy Creek Hills, view of.....	115	Maple Creek, Nebraska, section on.....	78
Fairview, section near.....	83	McCook, figure showing section near.....	86
view of Big Sioux River near.....	138	Meek, F. B., cited on fossils.....	98
Firesteel Creek, ancient channel near.....	119	Middle Raccoon River, section near junction of Willow Creek and.....	102
Florence Nebraska, view of bluff above.....	72	Milford, Nebraska, section near.....	80-81
sections near.....	78, 79	Missouri River, age of trough of.....	146-154
Fossils in loess, occurrence of.....	98	character of valley of.....	62
Fort Randall, moraine near.....	54	diagram of the trough of.....	140
view of lower bowldery terrace near.....	132	low-water slopes of.....	140
Fremont, Nebraska, exposure near.....	135	plates showing sections across.....	148, 150
section west of.....	79	pre-Glacial course of.....	30
Fremont County, Iowa, thickness of loess in.....	100	silt terraces at the Great Bend.....	128
Fremont, Elkhorn and Missouri Valley Railroad, elevations along.....	154	table of heights of terrace along.....	137
Garretson, driftless area near.....	84-85	terraces along.....	128-138
Gerber, E., acknowledgments to.....	16	view of Great Bend.....	128
elevations furnished by.....	154	Missouri Valley, Iowa, section near.....	88
quoted on the deepening of the Missouri.....	150-151	Mitchell, Alexander, acknowledgments to.....	17
Grandview, ancient swamp near.....	121	Montrose, plates showing osars, etc., near.....	36, 38
view of the moraine from 2 miles south of wells near.....	27	Moraine, definition of term.....	37
wells near.....	120	outer, structure and position.....	37-38
Gravel and sand deposits, character of.....	66-67	Mount Vernon, wells near.....	120
Greenwood, terrace at.....	132	Nebraska, distribution of drift in.....	69-81
view of lower bowldery terrace near.....	134	slope in eastern.....	142
Hartington, Nebraska, drift near.....	73	thickness of loess in northern.....	100
Hawarden, Iowa, elevations between Iroquois, South Dakota, and.....	158	Nebraska City, depth to rock at.....	148
Hayden, F. V., cited on Carboniferous rocks cited on exposures of Benton formation.....	153	plate showing section across Missouri River at.....	150
work of.....	13	Nicollet, J. N., work of.....	13
Helix alternata, occurrence of.....	98	Niobrara, Nebraska, drift near.....	69
Herman, Nebraska, terrace near.....	133	exposure near.....	134
Herrick, Nebraska, plate showing loess near.....	102	Niobrara formation, location of exposures of.....	15
section of south bluff of Missouri River near.....	72	Niobrara River, pre-Glacial course of.....	30
terrace near.....	132	Omaha, depth to bed rock at.....	147
Hills, F. C., elevations furnished by.....	166-167	plate showing section across Missouri River at.....	150
Hopkins, H. M., information furnished by.....	125	Osmond, Nebraska, figures showing cuts east of.....	75, 76
Hughitt, Marvin, acknowledgments to.....	17	Pacific Junction, Iowa, figure showing exposure near.....	68
Ice sheet, plates showing extent of.....	120, 122	sections near.....	89, 90
Iowa, drift in.....	85-91	striae near.....	69
slope in western.....	144	Pierre formation, location of exposures of.....	15
Iroquois, South Dakota, elevations between Hawarden, Iowa, and.....	158	Plainview, wells near.....	120
James Ridge, description of valley of.....	122	Plankinton, spotted surface near.....	121
elevations on.....	162, 164	Platte River, terrace along.....	63
exposures of older rocks in valley of.....	122	Plattsmouth, depth to rock at.....	148
views of.....	28, 30	plate showing section across Missouri River at.....	150
Johnson, C. W., acknowledgments to.....	16	Pleasant Hill, Nebraska, section near.....	80
elevations furnished by.....	155-157	Ponca, Nebraska, section at.....	74
Keg Creek, Iowa, figure showing section between Silver Creek and.....	94	Ponca Reach drift region, description of.....	53-55
section near.....	90	Pony Hills, South Dakota, view of.....	114
Lake Andes outlet, view of.....	26	Powell, J. W., cited on river cutting.....	152
Lake Dakota, cause of.....	125	Pratt Creek, course of moraine east of.....	18
Lederle, G. A., acknowledgments to.....	17	course of outer moraine from Running Water to.....	25-27
cited on deepening of the Missouri.....	151	course of outer moraine from Turtle Point to.....	19-25
Lemars, Iowa, elevations between Chamberlain, South Dakota, and.....	159-160	terrace in valley of.....	131
Lesterville, morainic hills near.....	29	Pukwana, ancient channel near.....	46
Letcher, well section at.....	125	Red clay, character of.....	66
Loess region, boundaries of.....	56-58	Red Lake drift region, boundary and area embraced in.....	42-43
elevations in.....	59	character of drift in.....	43
Logan Creek, elevations on.....	156		
Lower Brule Agency, terrace at.....	129		

Page.	Page.
Red Lake drift region, data from wells and exposures in	50-51
elevations in	48-49
hypotheses concerning	51-53
Reeder, E. O., explanation by	165
Region discussed, limits of	14
Riverside Station, Iowa, section near	88
Rockport, moraine near	115
Running Water, course of outer moraine from Pratt Creek to	25-27
Sand hills, description of	64
Santee Agency, Nebraska, sections near	71
view of upper bowldery terrace near	136
volcanic ash stratum near	70
Shimek, B., cited on fossils	98
Silver Creek, figure showing section between Keg Creek and	94
Sioux City, Iowa, depth to bed rock at	147
elevation at	155
plate showing section across Missouri River at	148
sections near	87
terrace near	133
Sioux City and Northern Railway, elevations along	167
Sioux City, O'Neill and Western Railway, elevations along	166-167
Sioux Falls, exposures near	84
sections at and near	84, 102, 103
striae near	68
Sioux quartzite, figure showing markings on	111
Sioux River, elevations on	162-163
Skunk Creek, description of valley of	106
knolls near	109
South Dakota, drift in	81-85
Spirit Mound, course of outer moraine from Bonhomme to	29-32
view of	30
Split Rock Creek, description of valley of	106
knolls near	109-110
Striae in loess region	68-69
Striae in second moraine	126
Succinea obliqua, occurrence of	98
Terraces in loess region, description of	63-64
Till, character of	65-66
Todd, J. E., cited on excavation of the trough of the Missouri	152
cited on fossils	98
Turkey Ridge, description of	31-32
map of	32
Turtle Point, course of moraine near	18
course of outer moraine from Pratt Creek to	19-25
Turtle Point, description of	19
view of	19
Turtle Ridge, map of southwest Wessingtons and	20
transverse section of	21
view of	20
view of old overflow channel in	22
description of	19-23
Union County, plate showing details of moraine in	34
Upham, Warren, cited on exposure at Pali-sade	106
work of	13
Valley Springs, striae near	69
Vermilion, sections at and near	74, 134
terraces at and near	81, 133
Vermilion Gap, description of moraine near	32
Vermilion Point, course of moraine from Big Sioux River to	35-36
Vermilion River, elevations on	158, 160
Vermilion Valley, description of	123
Wall Lake, view of inner slope of moraine south of	35
Walnut Creek, Iowa, figure showing cut near	94
Warren, G. K., cited on elevation	145
cited on Tertiary rocks	16
reference to	26
work of	13
Wells, data from	51
Wessingtons, southwest, description of	22-24
map of Turtle Ridge and	20
section of	37
West Bijon Hills, old water line on	47
West Point, Nebraska, sections near	77, 78
view of ash stratum near	70
volcanic ash stratum near	70
West Vermilion River, elevations on	158
Wheeler, terraces at and near	129, 132, 136
White, C. A., cited on boundary of loess	97
formation named by	15
White Lake, wells near	120
White River, description of valley of	133
drift south of	45-46
view of buttes south of	43
Whittemore, D. J., acknowledgments to	16
elevations furnished by	161-165
Winchell, N. H., cited on Algonkian formations	15
cited on boundary of loess	97
reference to	93
Yankton, terrace near	132